

**TABLE OF CONTENTS****FIRE SUPPRESSION**

21 05 00	Fire Protection Supplemental Conditions
21 05 17	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping
21 05 18	Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping
21 05 23	General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping
21 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment
21 05 53	Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment
21 11 19	Fire Department Connections
21 13 13	Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems

**PLUMBING**

22 05 00	Plumbing Supplemental Conditions
22 05 01	Plumbing Basic Materials and Methods
22 05 17	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
22 05 18	Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping
22 05 19	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
22 05 23.12	Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping
22 05 23.13	Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping
22 04 23.14	Check Valves for Plumbing Piping
22 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 05 53	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 07 19	Plumbing Piping Insulation
22 11 16	Domestic Water Piping
22 11 19	Domestic Water Piping Specialties
22 13 16	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
22 13 19	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
22 13 19.13	Sanitary Drains
22 14 13	Facility Storm Drainage Piping
22 14 23	Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
22 42 13.13	Commercial Water Closets
22 42 13.16	Commercial Urinals
22 42 16.13	Commercial Lavatories
22 42 16.16	Commercial Sinks
22 47 13	Drinking Fountains

**HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

23 05 00	Mechanical Supplemental Conditions
----------	------------------------------------

23 05 01	Mechanical Basic Materials and Methods
23 05 17	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping
23 05 93	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
23 07 13	Duct Insulation
23 23 00	Refrigerant Piping
23 31 13	Metal Ducts
23 33 00	Air Duct Accessories
23 33 46	Flexible Ducts
23 36 00	Air Terminal Units
23 37 13.13	Air Diffusers
23 37 13.23	Registers and Grilles
23 82 39.13	Unit Heaters

## **ELECTRICAL**

26 05 00	Electrical Supplemental Conditions
26 05 19	Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
26 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
26 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
26 05 33	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems
26 05 43	Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems
26 05 44	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Raceways and Cabling
26 05 53	Identification for Electrical Systems
26 09 23	Lighting Control Devices
26 24 16	Panelboards
26 27 26	Wiring Devices
26 28 16	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
26 43 13	Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits
26 51 19	LED Interior Lighting
26 52 13	Emergency and Exit Lighting
26 56 19	LED Exterior Lighting

## **ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

28 46 21.11	Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems
-------------	--------------------------------

**SECTION 21 05 00 - FIRE PROTECTION SUPPLEMENTAL CONDITIONS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 REFERENCES**

- A. This entire Division forms an integral part of each HVAC, Fire Protection, Plumbing, controls and all other related mechanical Divisions.
- B. Conditions of the Contract and Division 1, General Requirements, apply to work of this Division. Where paragraphs of this Division conflict with similar paragraphs of Division 1, requirements of this Division shall prevail.
- C. Examine drawings and other Divisions of specifications for requirements that affect work of this Division.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. As used in these Divisions, “provide” means “furnish and install.” “Furnish” means “to purchase and deliver to the project site complete with every necessary appurtenance and support,” and “install” means “to unload at the delivery point at the site and perform every operation necessary to establish secure mounting and correct operation at the proper location in the project”.

**1.3 SCOPE**

- A. Perform work and provide material and equipment as shown on Drawings and/or as specified and/or indicated in this Division of the Specifications. Completely coordinate work of the Division with work of other trades and provide a complete and fully functional installation.
- B. Drawings and Specifications form complimentary requirements; provide work specified and not shown, and work shown and not specified as though explicitly required by both. Although work is not specifically shown or specified, provide supplementary or miscellaneous items, appurtenances, devices and materials obviously necessary for a sound, secure and complete installation.
- C. Give notices, file plans, obtain permits and licenses, pay fees and back charges, and obtain necessary approvals from authorities that have jurisdiction as required to perform work in accordance with all legal requirements and with Specifications, Drawings, Addenda and Change Orders, all of which are part of Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Listing of Drawings does not limit responsibility of determining full extent of work required by these Contract Documents. Refer to Architectural, HVAC, Fire Protection, Plumbing, Electrical, Structural and all other Drawings and other Divisions that indicate types of construction in which work shall be installed and work of other trades with which work of this Division must be coordinated.
- B. Except where modified by a specific notation to the contrary, it shall be understood that the indication and/or description of any item, in the drawings or specifications or both, carries with it the instruction to furnish and install the item, regardless of whether or not this instruction is explicitly stated as part of the indication or description.
- C. Items referred to in singular number in Contract Documents shall be provided in quantities necessary to complete work.

#### 1.5 DISCREPANCIES IN DOCUMENTS

- A. Where Drawings or Specifications conflict or are unclear, advise Architect in writing before Award of Contract. Otherwise, Engineers interpretation of Contract Documents shall be final and no additional compensation shall be permitted due to discrepancies or unclarities thus resolved.
- B. Where Drawings or Specifications do not coincide with manufacturers' recommendations, or with applicable codes and standards, alert Architect in writing before installation. Otherwise, make changes in installed work as Architect requires within Contract Price.

#### 1.6 MODIFICATIONS IN LAYOUT

- A. In order to obtain the Engineer's desired aesthetics in spaces used by building occupants, in all such spaces, prior to installation of visible material and equipment (including access panels) review Architectural Drawings for desired locations and where not definitely indicated, request information from Architect.
- B. Check Contract Drawings, as well as Shop Drawings, of all subcontractors to verify and coordinate spaces in which work of this Division will be installed.
- C. Maintain maximum headroom at all locations. All piping, duct, conduit, and associated components to be as tight to underside of structure as possible.

- D. Where conflicts or potential conflicts exist and engineering guidance is desired, submit sketch or proposed resolution to Engineers for review and approval.

#### 1.7 CODES STANDARDS, AUTHORITIES AND PERMITS

- A. Perform work strictly as required by rules, regulations, standards, codes, ordinances, and laws of local, state, and federal governments, and other authorities that have legal jurisdiction over the site.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be manufactured, installed and tested as specified in latest editions of applicable publications, standards, rulings and determinations of:
  - 1. Local and state building, plumbing, mechanical, electrical, fire and health department codes.
  - 2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
  - 3. American Insurance Association (A.I.A.) (formerly National Board of Fire Underwriters).
  - 4. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
  - 5. Underwriters Laboratories (UL).
  - 6. Factory Mutual Association (FM).
  - 7. Owners Insurance Underwriter.
- C. Material and equipment shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories (UL), and approved by ASME, ANSI and ASTM for intended service.

#### 1.8 GUARANTEE AND 24-HOUR SERVICE

- A. Guarantee the Work of this Division in writing for one year following the date of Substantial Completion. The guarantee shall repair or replace defective materials, equipment, workmanship, and installation that develop within this period, promptly and to Engineer's satisfaction and correct damage caused in making necessary repairs and replacements under guarantee within Contract Price.
- B. Replace material and equipment that require excessive service during guarantee period as defined and as directed by Architect.
- C. Provide 24 hour service beginning on the date of Substantial Completion and lasting until the termination of the guarantee period. Service shall be at no cost to the Owner.

- D. At end of guarantee period, transfer manufacturers' equipment and material warranties still in force to Owner.

#### 1.9 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. As work progresses and for duration of Contract, maintain complete and separate set of prints of Contract Drawings at job site at all times. Record work completed and all changes from original Contract Drawings clearly and accurately including work installed as a modification or addition to the original design. Include actual location of existing utilities if they differ from design documents. Record valve tags as they are installed.
- B. At completion of work prepare a complete set of record drawings on bond paper or CAD discs showing all systems as actually installed.
- C. THE ENGINEER WILL NOT CERTIFY THE ACCURACY OF THE RECORD DRAWINGS - THIS IS THE SOLE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE CONTRACTOR.
- D. Each trade shall submit the record set for approval by the building department in a form acceptable to the department, when required by the jurisdiction. Such drawing format size changes, and supplemental information required for the submittal are the requirement of the contractor.

#### 1.10 BULLETINS, MANUALS, OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS & PROTECTION

- A. Obtain at time of purchase of equipment, three (3) copies of operation, lubrication and maintenance manuals for all items. Assemble literature in coordinated manuals with additional information describing combined operation of field assembled units, including as-built wiring diagrams. Manual shall contain names and addresses of manufacturers and local representatives who stock or furnish repair parts for items or equipment.
- B. Operating instructions: Upon completion of installation, or when Owner accepts portions of building and equipment for operational use, instruct Owner's operating personnel in any or all parts of all systems. Instructions shall be performed by factory-trained personnel. Owner shall determine which systems require additional instructions. Duration of instructions shall take equipment through complete cycle of operation (at least five working days). Make adjustments under operating conditions.

#### 1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. This Paragraph supplements Division 1.
- B. Provide a submittal cover sheet as shown on the following page for each item submitted, completely filled out. Do not provide one sheet for multiple submissions.
- C. Provide product data for all equipment shown on drawings or scheduled, prepared by manufacturers, suppliers and vendors including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Detailed dimensional drawings.
  - 2. Accurate and complete description of materials of construction.
  - 3. Installation details.
  - 4. Manufacturer's published performance characteristics and capacity rating (performance data, alone, is not acceptable).
  - 5. Electrical requirements and wiring diagrams. Drawings shall clearly indicate location (terminal block or wire number), voltage and function for all field terminations.
- D. Submittals shall contain information specific to system, equipment, and materials required by Contract Documents for this project only. Do not submit catalogs that describe products, models, options or accessories other than those required, unless irrelevant information is marked out or unless relevant information is highlighted clearly.

#### 1.12 METHOD OF PROCEDURE

- A. The drawings accompanying the Specifications are diagrammatic and intended to cover the approximate and relative locations of the Heating, Ventilating, Plumbing and Drainage, and Fire Protection and components.
- B. Installation, connection and interconnection of all components of these systems shall be complete and made in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and best practices of each trade.
- C. Contractors shall confer between themselves and each contractor shall lay out his own work and be responsible for the establishments of heights, grades, etc., for all interior and exterior piping, drains, fixtures, duct work, etc., in strict accordance with the drawings and specifications, and all physical conditions to be met at the building and shall be responsible for accuracy thereof. In case of conflict, equipment shall be relocated without cost to the Owner, as directed by the Engineer.

- D. Extraordinary care shall be used in the erection and installation of all equipment and materials to avoid marring surfaces of the work of other contractors, or of finish work presently in the building, each contractor will be held financially responsible for all such injury caused by lack of precaution and due to negligence on the part of his workmen.

#### 1.13 SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. **Coordination drawings must be prepared. Each trade is (HVAC, Plumbing, Electric, and Fire Protection) is responsible for documenting their work on the plan originally submitted as the pipe fabrication drawing. Location and elevation of the respective discipline's work must be shown on the coordination drawings. All work must be integrated with structural components, including trusses.**

B. Submittal Procedures and Format

1. Review submittal packages for compliance with Contract Documents and then submit to Architect for review. Submit electronically.
2. Provide additional copies of reviewed shop drawings as required for full distribution.
3. Shop Drawings showing layouts of systems shall contain sufficient plans, elevations, Divisions, details and schematics to describe work clearly. They shall be 1/4"=1'-0" scale, unless specified otherwise. Sheet metal shop drawings shall be 3/8"=1'-0" and shall indicate work of other Divisions where physical clearances are critical and where interferences are possible. Provide larger scale details as necessary. Sheet metal drawings shall show elements of Architect's reflected ceiling plan, exposed ductwork, walls, partitions, diffusers, registers, grilles, fire dampers, sleeves and other aspects of construction as necessary for coordination.
4. ALL FIREWALLS MUST BE HIGHLIGHTED ON THE SHEETMETAL DRAWINGS FOR APPROPRIATE COORDINATION.
5. Shop drawings showing manufacturer's product data shall contain detailed dimensional drawings, accurate and complete description of materials of construction, manufacturer's published performance characteristics and capacity ratings (performance data, alone, is not acceptable), electrical requirements and wiring diagrams. Drawings shall clearly indicate location (terminal block or wire number), voltage and function for all field terminations, and other information necessary to demonstrate compliance with all requirements of Contract Documents.
6. Provide shop drawing submittals showing details of piping and vertical connections to ALL equipment. If connection details are not submitted and connections are found to be installed incorrectly in the field, this contractor shall reinstall them within the original contract price.



C. Acceptable Manufacturers

1. The engineer's mechanical design for each product is based on the single manufacturer listed in the schedule or shown on the drawings. In Part 2 of the specifications certain Alternate Manufacturers are listed as being acceptable.

D. Required Use of Acceptable Manufacturers on this Project

1. Substitution of products other than those of the Acceptable Manufacturers specified herein shall not be made. Only the specified items or the comparable product by one of the specified Alternate Manufacturers shall be submitted. Products by other manufacturers shall not be used on this project.

SHOP DRAWING COVER SHEET	
PROJECT:	CONTRACTOR:
DIVISION NO:	DIVISION NO:
DESCRIPTION:	
CONTRACT DRAWING REFERENCE NO:	
EQUIPMENT TAG:	
SUBMISSION (CIRCLE ONE): FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, FOURTH	
DATE:	

INFORMATION AND CHECKLIST	REPLY	COMMENTS
1. Contractor's Log #ID		
2. Name, address, and phone number of supplier		
3. Are all specified or scheduled items included and exactly match scheduled/specified items?	Yes No	
4. Is this item a substitution?	Yes No	
5. Are deviations clearly identified?	Yes No	
6. Does equipment fit space shown on construction documents, coordination drawings, and actual field conditions?	Yes No	
7. Has support, erection, weights, and installation been coordinated with all trades?	Yes No	
8. Does the proposed installation void warranties and/or violate UL or code requirements?	Yes No	
9. Does this material/equipment add expense to any other trade or project costs?	Yes No	
10. Does equipment require interface with other trades? List divisions and specifics requiring coordination?	Yes No	
11. Is control interface coordinated?	Yes No	
12. List electrical characteristics (V/Ph/A)		

#### E. Deviations

- Concerning deviations other than substitutions, proposed deviations from Contract Documents shall be requested individually, in writing, whether deviations result from field conditions, standard shop practice, or other cause. Submit letter with transmittal of shop drawings, which flags the deviation to the attention of the Architect.

2. Approval of proposed deviations, if any, will be made at discretion of Architect.

F. Responsibility

1. Intent of Submittal review is to check for capacity, rating, and certain construction features. Contractor shall ensure that work meets requirements of Contract Documents regarding information that pertains to fabrication processes or means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction; and for coordination of work of this and other Divisions. Work shall comply with submittals marked "REVIEWED" to extent that they agree with Contract Documents. Submittal review shall not diminish responsibility under this Contract for dimensional coordination, quantities, installation, wiring, supports and access for service, nor shop drawing errors or deviations from requirements of Contract Documents. The architect's noting of some errors while overlooking others will not excuse the contractor from proceeding in error. Contract Documents requirements are not limited, waived nor superseded in any way by review.
2. INFORM SUBCONTRACTORS, MANUFACTURERS, SUPPLIERS, ETC. OF SCOPE AND LIMITED NATURE OF REVIEW PROCESS AND ENFORCE COMPLIANCE WITH CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.

- G. Schedule: Incorporate shop drawing review period into construction schedule so that work is not delayed. Contractor shall assume full responsibility for delays caused by not incorporating the following shop drawing review time requirements into his project schedule. Working days listed reference the time in the Engineer's office. It does not include transmittal or review time of Contractor or Architect. Allow at least 10 working days, exclusive of transmittal time, for review each time shop drawing is submitted or resubmitted.

1.14 WORKING PLANS (fire protection and fire alarm only)

- A. Submit working plans signed and stamped by professional engineer registered in state in which project is located to authorities that have jurisdiction to:
1. Architect.
  2. Engineer.
  3. Insurance Underwriter.

- B. Submit working plans in one complete package. When it is not possible to submit entire system design in one package due to job conditions, submit plans of entire project indicating area not yet defined.
- C. Working plans will be subject to owner's final approval. Submit to engineer only after review by other authorities.
- D. Pipe sizing shall be based on hydraulic calculations. Submit hydraulic calculations with working plans.
- E. Indicate battery and wire sizing requirements with fire alarm working plan.

#### 1.15 HANGERS

- A. Each Contractor shall supply hangers and hanger supports required for piping and equipment installed under this contract.
- B. Hangers shall adequately support the piping system. Hangers shall be installed in accordance with good practice and as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Hanger spacing:

<u>Pipe Size Inches</u>	<u>Maximum Spacing</u>
1 and less	7 feet
1 ¼	8 feet
1 ½	9 feet
2	10 feet
2 ½	11 feet
3	12 feet
4	14 feet
6 to 12"	15 feet
12" to 20"	18 feet

#### 1.16 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Contractor shall furnish and set all sleeves, inserts, etc., required for the installation of his work.

#### 1.17 FLASHING

- A. Base flashing will be provided by the Contractor and counter flashing shall be provided by the Contractor where work pierces roof construction.

#### 1.18 CLEANING

- A. After testing acceptance by Engineer and Owner, Contractor shall thoroughly clean all equipment and material involved in his contract to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

#### 1.19 PAINTING AND FINISHING

- A. Contractor is responsible for completion of painting of all of their installed materials and equipment not factory finished additional miscellaneous painting of their work as directed by the Engineer.

#### 1.20 PIPING – GENERAL

- A. Due to the scale of drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets and fittings which may be required in piping system. Contractor shall furnish all offsets, fittings, valves, traps, specialties and other materials that may be required to meet the conditions without additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Grade water piping of all mechanical systems to avoid pockets and permit systems to be purged of air as well as to be drained.
- C. Do not install joints or fittings over any motor, switchboard or electrical equipment.

#### 1.21 UNIONS AND FLANGES

- A. Install accessible unions and flanges in supply and return connections and other adjacent to all equipment, fixtures, specialties, automatic valves and at all other points in all systems where required to facilitate removal of specialties or equipment for repairs.

#### 1.22 MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL COORDINATION

- A. Contractor shall furnish and install all motors, controllers, starters, pilot lights, float and pressure switches, and control wiring; also other special automatic controls as

noted in the Specifications for all equipment furnished under their contracts. This electrical equipment shall be as recommended by the mechanical equipment manufacturer, in accordance with the electrical specifications for similar items, and of such type as to work properly with automatic temperature control sequences where required.

- B. The Contractor shall furnish and install fused disconnect switches and feeders for all motorized equipment under all contracts and make final connection to all motors. Contractor shall wire all of the above items in Paragraphs 1 and 2.

#### 1.23 ELECTRICAL MOTORS AND STARTERS

- A. Mechanical Contractor is responsible, in each instance, for the proper selection of motors and starters of suitable characteristics with details submitted for approval to the Engineer prior to installation.

#### 1.24 INSULATION – GENERAL

- A. Piping and all other insulated items shall be tested approved, cleaned and dried before application of insulation. Insulation shall include all insulating material and their application and finishes as required, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### 1.25 PROTECTION

- A. All openings in pipes, conduits, fittings, duct work, etc., shall be effectively sealed to exclude dirt, sand and other foreign substances.

#### 1.26 TESTS

- A. The following requirements are supplementary to test specified for individual equipment or systems in mechanical and electrical work Divisions.
  - 1. Concealed or insulated work shall remain uncovered until required tests have been completed.
  - 2. Conduct pressure, performance and operating tests as specified or required for each system or equipment unit in presence of the Engineer as well as a representative of agencies having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Obtain certificates of approval and/or acceptance as specified or required in compliance with regulations of agencies having jurisdiction. Work shall not be deemed complete until such certificates have been delivered to the Engineer.

4. Testing shall prove conclusively that all systems operate properly, efficiently and quietly in accordance with intent of drawings and specifications. Each contractor's participation will be required for the life safety acceptance test.
5. Allow 40 hours per trade of the most knowledgeable technician to support testing.

#### 1.27 SERVICING OF EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. After work has been completed under the contract and prior to final acceptance tests, Contractor shall have the manufacturer of the equipment, or their authorized agents, put it into actual operation. In each case, the Contractor shall have the manufacturer thoroughly check the complete installation of the equipment produced by him for proper and correct operation under the services intended.
- B. Contractor shall assure that the owner's personnel are properly instructed in the servicing of the equipment.

#### 1.28 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Contractor shall provide two copies of printed instructions in loose leaf binders to the Engineer upon completion of the installation.

#### 1.29 GUARANTEE

- A. Contractor shall unconditionally guarantee in writing all materials, equipment and workmanship for a period of one year from date of acceptance of systems by Owner as indicated by letter to this effect from Owner to Contractor. Contractor shall provide free service for all equipment involved in contract during this guarantee period.
- B. Guarantee shall include restoration to its original condition of all adjacent work that must be disturbed in fulfilling this guarantee.
- C. All such repairs and/or replacements shall be made without delay and at the convenience of the Owner.

**END OF SECTION 21 05 00**

**SECTION 21 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.
6. Silicone sealants.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SLEEVES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  2. CALPICO, Inc.
  3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop.



- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anticorrosion coated, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- E. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- F. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - 2. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
  - 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
  - 4. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
  - 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - c. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.

- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Smooth-On.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.

1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  5. Use silicone sealant to seal around the outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- or smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Use grout or silicone sealant, to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
  2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
  5. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 21 05 17

## **SECTION 21 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
  - 2. Dearborn Brass.
  - 3. Jones Stephens Corp.

#### **2.2 ESCUTCHEONS**

- A. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- B. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

## 2.3 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for exposed piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece stainless steel finish.
    - d. Insulated Piping: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
    - e. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge, or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
    - h. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - i. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - j. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - k. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
    - l. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - m. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - n. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - o. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - p. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - q. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- r. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - s. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 21 05 18



**SECTION 21 05 23 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
  - 2. Bronze butterfly valves with indicators.
  - 3. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
  - 4. Check valves.
  - 5. Bronze OS&Y gate valves.
  - 6. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
  - 7. NRS gate valves.
  - 8. Indicator posts.
  - 9. Trim and drain valves.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- B. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- C. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- D. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
  - 1. Main Level: HAMV - Fire Main Equipment.
    - a. Level 1: HCBZ - Indicator Posts, Gate Valve.
    - b. Level 1: HLOT - Valves.
      - 1) Level 3: HLUG - Ball Valves, System Control.
      - 2) Level 3: HLXS - Butterfly Valves.
      - 3) Level 3: HMER - Check Valves.
      - 4) Level 3: HMRZ - Gate Valves.
  - 2. Main Level: VDGT - Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices.
    - a. Level 1: VQGU - Valves, Trim and Drain.
- B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
  - 1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
    - a. Indicator posts.
    - b. Valves.
      - 1) Gate valves.
      - 2) Check valves.
        - a) Single check valves.
      - 3) Miscellaneous valves.
- C. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.
- D. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  2. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
  3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- E. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for valves.
- G. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher as required by system pressures.
- H. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
  2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
  3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 and smaller.

## 2.2 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A WATTS Brand.
  2. NIBCO INC.
  3. Victaulic Company.
- B. Description:
1. UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global standard for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  3. Body Design: Two piece.
  4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
  5. Port Size: Full or standard.
  6. Seats: PTFE.
  7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
  8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  9. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
  10. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
  11. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
  12. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

## 2.3 BRONZE BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Fivalco Inc.
2. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
3. Milwaukee Valve Company.

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
2. Minimum: Pressure rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem Material: Bronze or stainless steel.
6. Disc: Stainless steel with EPDM coating.
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
10. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

## 2.4 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Anvil International.
2. Fivalco Inc.
3. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron with nylon, EPDM, epoxy, or polyamide coating.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem: Stainless steel.
6. Disc: Ductile iron, nickel plated and EPDM or SBR coated.
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: Lug or wafer, grooved-end connections.

## 2.5 CHECK VALVES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A WATTS Brand.
2. Anvil International.
3. Apollo-Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc.

## B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel with elastomeric seal.
6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

## 2.6 BRONZE OS&amp;Y GATE VALVES

## A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. NIBCO INC.
3. United Brass Works, Inc.

## B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Bronze or brass.
4. Wedge: One-piece bronze or brass.
5. Wedge Seat: Bronze.
6. Stem: Bronze or brass.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.7 IRON OS&amp;Y GATE VALVES

## A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Cast Iron Pipe Company.
2. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
3. Hammond Valve.

## B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).

2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Flanged, Grooved, Threaded.

## 2.8 NRS GATE VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. American Cast Iron Pipe Company.
  2. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
  3. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
- B. Description:
  1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron with elastomeric coating.
  5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
  6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
  7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
  8. Supervisory Switch: External.
  9. End Connections: Flanged, Grooved, Threaded.

## 2.9 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

- A. Ball Valves:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
    - c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
  2. Description:
    - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
    - b. Body Design: Two piece.
    - c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
    - d. Port size: Full or standard.
    - e. Seats: PTFE.

- f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
- g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- h. Actuator: Handlever.
- i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2-1/2: Threaded ends.
- j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

B. Angle Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. United Brass Works, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
  - c. Ends: Threaded.
  - d. Stem: Bronze.
  - e. Disc: Bronze.
  - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Globe Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. NIBCO INC.
  - b. United Brass Works, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - c. Ends: Threaded.
  - d. Stem: Bronze.
  - e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
  - f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve installation requirements and applications:
  - 1. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
  - 2. Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in dry-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
- E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.



- H. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections.
- I. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

END OF SECTION 21 05 23

**SECTION 21 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Equipment supports.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."
3. Division 01 Section "Sustainable Design Requirements – LEEDv4 BD+C."

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS****A. Product Data:** For each type of product.**B. Shop Drawings:** Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Equipment supports.

**C. Delegated-Design Submittal:** For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 13.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 203.

#### 2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: Factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot-dip galvanized.
  - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
  - 1. Description: Copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

## 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

### A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
  - b. Flex-Strut Inc.
  - c. G-Strut.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of [carbon steel] <Insert material>.
8. Metallic Coating: No coating.

### B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  - c. Empire Industries, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Metallic Coating: Plain.

## 2.5 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  - 2. Clement Support Services.
  - 3. ERICO International Corporation.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psi.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hilti, Inc.
    - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - c. MKT Fastening, LLC.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
    - b. Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - c. Hilti, Inc.
  - 2. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel.
  - 3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout, suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with installation requirements of approvals and listings. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal strut systems.
- D. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for outdoor insulated piping.

- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal hanger-shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
  - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
  - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal Hanger Shields: Install with insulation of same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.



### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with NFPA requirements for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- G. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  - 3. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 4. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  - 5. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  - 6. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 7. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  - 8. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  - 9. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.

- H. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- I. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- J. Building Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  - 2. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  - 3. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
- K. Saddles and Shields: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  - 3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- L. Comply with NFPA requirements for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

### 3.7 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT (LEED)

- A. The contractor, subcontractors, and their personnel shall follow the procedures and practices for waste separation, collection, and transport as defined in the contractor's "Waste Management Plan" as required by Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."

END OF SECTION 21 05 29

**SECTION 21 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve Schedules: Valve numbering scheme.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS**

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - c. Carlton Industries, LP.

2. Material and Thickness: Anodized aluminum, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: Black.
4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
6. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws.
7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  3. Carlton Industries, LP.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Black.
- D. Background Color: White.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
  2. Brady Corporation.
  3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping at least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
- F. Pipe-Label Colors:
1. Background Color: Safety Red.
  2. Letter Color: White.

## 2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Piping:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - c. Champion America.
  2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping at least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
  3. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
  4. Stencil Paint: Safety Red, exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  5. Identification Paint: White, exterior, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

## 2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
  2. Brady Corporation.
  3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
- B. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
1. Tag Material: Anodized aluminum, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Fasteners: Brass or S-hook.
  3. Valve-Tag Color: Safety Red.
  4. Letter Color: White.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  3. Carlton Industries, LP.
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Safety Yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting." Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
- B. Stenciled Pipe-Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

### 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Fire-Suppression Standpipe: 1-1/2 inches.
    - b. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches.
    - c. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 21 05 53



**SECTION 21 11 19 - FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exposed-type fire-department connections.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section “Construction Waste Management.”
  - 2. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Design Requirements – LEEDv4 BD+C.”

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each fire-department connection.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 EXPOSED-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American Fire Hose & Cabinet.
  - 2. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
  - 3. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
- B. Standard: UL 405.
- C. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.
- D. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- E. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.

- F. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
- G. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
- H. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
- I. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
- J. Number of Inlets: Two.
- K. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE"
- L. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
- M. Outlet Size: NPS 4.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire-department connections.
- B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression standpipe system to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-department connection installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-type fire-department connections.
- B. Install yard-type fire-department connections in concrete slab support. Comply with requirements for concrete in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Install two protective pipe bollards around each fire-department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications."
- D. Install automatic ball-drip drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

#### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT (LEED)

- A. The contractor, subcontractors, and their personnel shall follow the procedures and practices for waste separation, collection, and transport as defined in the contractor's "Waste Management Plan" as required by Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."

END OF SECTION 21 11 19

**SECTION 21 13 13 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Cover system for sprinkler piping.
3. Specialty valves.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Alarm devices.
6. Manual control stations.
7. Control panels.
8. Pressure gages.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 211119 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed- and yard-type fire department connections.
2. Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping" for ball, butterfly, check, gate, post-indicator, and trim and drain valves.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS****A. Product Data:** For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

**B. Shop Drawings:** For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Domestic water piping.
  - 2. Compressed air piping.
  - 3. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
- B. Design Data:
  - 1. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field Test Reports:
  - 1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
  - 2. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
  - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.

### B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

### A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:

1. NFPA 13.

### B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.

### C. High-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 250-psig working pressure.

### D. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Perform fire-hydrant flow test and record to indicate the following conditions:

- a. Date.
- b. Time.
- c. Performed by.
- d. Location of Residual Fire Hydrant R.
- e. Location of Flow Fire Hydrant F.
- f. Static Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant R.
- g. Measured Flow at Flow Fire Hydrant F.
- h. Residual Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant R.

2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
- b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
  - 1) Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
  - 2) Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
  - 3) Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
  - 4) Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.

3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
  - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
  - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
  - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.
5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
  - a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft.
  - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
  - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
  - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
  - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7

## 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Galvanized and Black Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M: Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 30, Galvanized-Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M; ASTM A 795/A 795M, Type E; or ASME B36.10M wrought steel, with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- C. Thinwall Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- D. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.
- E. Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- F. Galvanized- and Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.
- G. Galvanized and Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- H. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- I. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- J. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
  1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick EPDM rubber gasket.

- a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
- 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.
  - 1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- L. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International.
    - b. Apollo-Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc.
    - c. Corcoran Piping System Co.
  - 2. Painted Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  - 3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.
- M. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM Global-approved, 175-psig pressure rating with steel housing, rubber O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.

## 2.3 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
  - 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Alarm Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.



- b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
  - c. Tyco Fire Products LP.
- 2. Standard: UL 193.
  - 3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
  - 4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
  - 5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
  - 6. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.
  - 7. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
- 2. Standard: UL 1726.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
- 5. Size: NPS 3/4.
- 6. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.4 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Anvil International.
  - c. Apollo-Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc.
- 2. Standard: UL 213.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
- 5. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
- 6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
- 7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
- 8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
    - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
    - c. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
  3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
  4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
  5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.
- C. Branch Line Testers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
    - b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
    - c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
  2. Standard: UL 199.
  3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  4. Body Material: Brass.
  5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  6. Inlet: Threaded.
  7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
  8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.
- D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
    - b. Triple R Specialty.
    - c. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
  3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
  4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
  5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Aegis Technologies, Inc.
  - b. CECA, LLC.
  - c. Corcoran Piping System Co.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Length: Adjustable.
7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

F. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fivalco Inc.
  - b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
  - c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

## 2.5 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
  2. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
  3. Tyco Fire Products LP.
- B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
  1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.
  2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
  3. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- E. Open Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element Removed: UL 199.
  1. Nominal Orifice: 1/2 inch, with discharge coefficient K between 5.3 and 5.8.

2. Nominal Orifice: 17/32 inch with discharge coefficient K between 7.4 and 8.2.

F. Sprinkler Finishes: Noted in schedule.

G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.

1. Ceiling Mounting: White-painted steel, one piece, flat, White-painted steel, two piece, with 1-inch vertical adjustment.
2. Sidewall Mounting: White-painted steel, one piece, flat.

H. Sprinkler Guards:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL 199.
3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

## 2.6 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
  - b. Notifier.
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
2. Standard: UL 464.
3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
4. Size: 10-inch diameter.
5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ADT Security Services, Inc.

- b. McDonnell & Miller.
    - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: UL 346.
  - 3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
  - 4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
  - 5. Type: Paddle operated.
  - 6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
  - 7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.
- D. Pressure Switches:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Barksdale, Inc.
    - b. Detroit Switch, Inc.
    - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: UL 346.
  - 3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
  - 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
  - 5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.
- E. Valve Supervisory Switches:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
    - b. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
    - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: UL 346.
  - 3. Type: Electrically supervised.
  - 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
  - 5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
  - 6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.7 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.

- 2. AMETEK, Inc.
- 3. Ashcroft Inc.
- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum
- E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

#### 3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building.
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers.
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water service.

#### 3.3 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water supply.

#### 3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.

1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
  2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.
- M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- N. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- O. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- P. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

- Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

### 3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.
- I. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join lightwall steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- J. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
- K. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- L. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.



- M. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join Schedule 5 steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

- A. Install cover system, brackets, and cover components for sprinkler piping according to manufacturer's "Installation Manual" and NFPA 13 or NFPA 13R for supports.

### 3.7 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
  - 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
  - 3. Install deluge valves in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

### 3.8 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

### 3.9 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
  - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
  - 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
  - 6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
  - 7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

### 3.12 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves and pressure-maintenance pumps.

### 3.13 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.

3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with cut-or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
4. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
5. Thinwall Schedule 10 nonstandard OD, thinwall or hybrid black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:

1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
4. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
5. Thinwall Schedule 10 nonstandard OD, thinwall or hybrid black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

E. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 and larger, shall be the following:

1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
4. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
5. Thinwall Schedule 10 or hybrid black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

### 3.14 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Pendent, recessed, flush, and concealed sprinklers as indicated.
3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.

4. Institutional ceiling heads in security areas.
5. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, pendent, dry sprinklers; and sidewall, dry sprinklers as indicated.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
4. Upright, Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Rough bronze in finished spaces exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

### 3.15 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT (LEED)

- A. The contractor, subcontractors, and their personnel shall follow the procedures and practices for waste separation, collection, and transport as defined in the contractor's "Waste Management Plan" as required by Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."

END OF SECTION 21 13 13

**SECTION 22 05 00 - PLUMBING SUPPLEMENTAL CONDITIONS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 REFERENCES**

- A. This entire Division forms an integral part of each HVAC, Fire Protection, Plumbing, controls and all other related mechanical Divisions.
- B. Conditions of the Contract and Division 1, General Requirements, apply to work of this Division. Where paragraphs of this Division conflict with similar paragraphs of Division 1, requirements of this Division shall prevail.
- C. Examine drawings and other Divisions of specifications for requirements that affect work of this Division.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. As used in these Divisions, “provide” means “furnish and install.” “Furnish” means “to purchase and deliver to the project site complete with every necessary appurtenance and support,” and “install” means “to unload at the delivery point at the site and perform every operation necessary to establish secure mounting and correct operation at the proper location in the project”.

**1.3 SCOPE**

- A. Perform work and provide material and equipment as shown on Drawings and/or as specified and/or indicated in this Division of the Specifications. Completely coordinate work of the Division with work of other trades and provide a complete and fully functional installation.
- B. Drawings and Specifications form complimentary requirements; provide work specified and not shown, and work shown and not specified as though explicitly required by both. Although work is not specifically shown or specified, provide supplementary or miscellaneous items, appurtenances, devices and materials obviously necessary for a sound, secure and complete installation.
- C. Give notices, file plans, obtain permits and licenses, pay fees and back charges, and obtain necessary approvals from authorities that have jurisdiction as required to perform work in accordance with all legal requirements and with Specifications, Drawings, Addenda and Change Orders, all of which are part of Contract Documents.

**1.4 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- A. Listing of Drawings does not limit responsibility of determining full extent of work required by these Contract Documents. Refer to Architectural, HVAC, Fire Protection, Plumbing, Electrical, Structural and all other Drawings and other Divisions that indicate types of construction in which work shall be installed and work of other trades with which work of this Division must be coordinated.

- B. Except where modified by a specific notation to the contrary, it shall be understood that the indication and/or description of any item, in the drawings or specifications or both, carries with it the instruction to furnish and install the item, regardless of whether or not this instruction is explicitly stated as part of the indication or description.
- C. Items referred to in singular number in Contract Documents shall be provided in quantities necessary to complete work.

#### 1.5 DISCREPANCIES IN DOCUMENTS

- A. Where Drawings or Specifications conflict or are unclear, advise Architect in writing before Award of Contract. Otherwise, Engineers interpretation of Contract Documents shall be final and no additional compensation shall be permitted due to discrepancies or unclarities thus resolved.
- B. Where Drawings or Specifications do not coincide with manufacturers' recommendations, or with applicable codes and standards, alert Architect in writing before installation. Otherwise, make changes in installed work as Architect requires within Contract Price.

#### 1.6 MODIFICATIONS IN LAYOUT

- A. In order to obtain the Engineer's desired aesthetics in spaces used by building occupants, in all such spaces, prior to installation of visible material and equipment (including access panels) review Architectural Drawings for desired locations and where not definitely indicated, request information from Architect.
- B. Check Contract Drawings, as well as Shop Drawings, of all subcontractors to verify and coordinate spaces in which work of this Division will be installed.
- C. Maintain maximum headroom at all locations. All piping, duct, conduit, and associated components to be as tight to underside of structure as possible.
- D. Where conflicts or potential conflicts exist and engineering guidance is desired, submit sketch or proposed resolution to Engineers for review and approval.

#### 1.7 CODES STANDARDS, AUTHORITIES AND PERMITS

- A. Perform work strictly as required by rules, regulations, standards, codes, ordinances, and laws of local, state, and federal governments, and other authorities that have legal jurisdiction over the site.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be manufactured, installed and tested as specified in latest editions of applicable publications, standards, rulings and determinations of:
  - 1. Local and state building, plumbing, mechanical, electrical, fire and health department codes.
  - 2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
  - 3. American Insurance Association (A.I.A.) (formerly National Board of Fire Underwriters).

4. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
  5. Underwriters Laboratories (UL).
  6. Factory Mutual Association (FM).
  7. Owners Insurance Underwriter.
- C. Material and equipment shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories (UL), and approved by ASME, ANSI and ASTM for intended service.

#### 1.8 GUARANTEE AND 24-HOUR SERVICE

- A. Guarantee the Work of this Division in writing for one year following the date of Substantial Completion. The guarantee shall repair or replace defective materials, equipment, workmanship, and installation that develop within this period, promptly and to Engineer's satisfaction and correct damage caused in making necessary repairs and replacements under guarantee within Contract Price.
- B. Replace material and equipment that require excessive service during guarantee period as defined and as directed by Architect.
- C. Provide 24 hour service beginning on the date of Substantial Completion and lasting until the termination of the guarantee period. Service shall be at no cost to the Owner.
- D. At end of guarantee period, transfer manufacturers' equipment and material warranties still in force to Owner.

#### 1.9 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. As work progresses and for duration of Contract, maintain complete and separate set of prints of Contract Drawings at job site at all times. Record work completed and all changes from original Contract Drawings clearly and accurately including work installed as a modification or addition to the original design. Include actual location of existing utilities if they differ from design documents. Record valve tags as they are installed.
- B. At completion of work prepare a complete set of record drawings on bond paper or CAD discs showing all systems as actually installed.
- C. THE ENGINEER WILL NOT CERTIFY THE ACCURACY OF THE RECORD DRAWINGS - THIS IS THE SOLE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE CONTRACTOR.
- D. Each trade shall submit the record set for approval by the building department in a form acceptable to the department, when required by the jurisdiction. Such drawing format size changes, and supplemental information required for the submittal are the requirement of the contractor.

#### 1.10 BULLETINS, MANUALS, OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS & PROTECTION

- A. Obtain at time of purchase of equipment, three (3) copies of operation, lubrication and maintenance manuals for all items. Assemble literature in coordinated manuals with additional information describing combined operation of field assembled units, including as-built wiring diagrams. Manual shall contain names and addresses of manufacturers and local representatives who stock or furnish repair parts for items or equipment.
- B. Operating instructions: Upon completion of installation, or when Owner accepts portions of building and equipment for operational use, instruct Owner's operating personnel in any or all parts of all systems. Instructions shall be performed by factory-trained personnel. Owner shall determine which systems require additional instructions. Duration of instructions shall take equipment through complete cycle of operation (at least five working days). Make adjustments under operating conditions.

#### 1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. This Paragraph supplements Division 1.
- B. Provide a submittal cover sheet as shown on the following page for each item submitted, completely filled out. Do not provide one sheet for multiple submissions.
- C. Provide product data for all equipment shown on drawings or scheduled, prepared by manufacturers, suppliers and vendors including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Detailed dimensional drawings.
  - 2. Accurate and complete description of materials of construction.
  - 3. Installation details.
  - 4. Manufacturer's published performance characteristics and capacity rating (performance data, alone, is not acceptable).
  - 5. Electrical requirements and wiring diagrams. Drawings shall clearly indicate location (terminal block or wire number), voltage and function for all field terminations.
- D. Submittals shall contain information specific to system, equipment, and materials required by Contract Documents for this project only. Do not submit catalogs that describe products, models, options or accessories other than those required, unless irrelevant information is marked out or unless relevant information is highlighted clearly.

#### 1.12 METHOD OF PROCEDURE

- A. The drawings accompanying the Specifications are diagrammatic and intended to cover the approximate and relative locations of the Heating, Ventilating, Plumbing and Drainage, and Fire Protection and components.
- B. Installation, connection and interconnection of all components of these systems shall be complete and made in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and best practices of each trade.



- C. Contractors shall confer between themselves and each contractor shall lay out his own work and be responsible for the establishments of heights, grades, etc., for all interior and exterior piping, drains, fixtures, duct work, etc., in strict accordance with the drawings and specifications, and all physical conditions to be met at the building and shall be responsible for accuracy thereof. In case of conflict, equipment shall be relocated without cost to the Owner, as directed by the Engineer.
- D. Extraordinary care shall be used in the erection and installation of all equipment and materials to avoid marring surfaces of the work of other contractors, or of finish work presently in the building, each contractor will be held financially responsible for all such injury caused by lack of precaution and due to negligence on the part of his workmen.

#### 1.13 SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. **Coordination drawings must be prepared. Each trade is (HVAC, Plumbing, Electric, and Fire Protection) is responsible for documenting their work on the plan originally submitted as the pipe fabrication drawing. Location and elevation of the respective discipline's work must be shown on the coordination drawings. All work must be integrated with structural components, including trusses.**
- B. Submittal Procedures and Format
  - 1. Review submittal packages for compliance with Contract Documents and then submit to Architect for review. Submit electronically.
  - 2. Provide additional copies of reviewed shop drawings as required for full distribution.
  - 3. Shop Drawings showing layouts of systems shall contain sufficient plans, elevations, Divisions, details and schematics to describe work clearly. They shall be 1/4"=1'-0" scale, unless specified otherwise. Sheet metal shop drawings shall be 3/8"=1'-0" and shall indicate work of other Divisions where physical clearances are critical and where interferences are possible. Provide larger scale details as necessary. Sheet metal drawings shall show elements of Architect's reflected ceiling plan, exposed ductwork, walls, partitions, diffusers, registers, grilles, fire dampers, sleeves and other aspects of construction as necessary for coordination.
  - 4. **ALL FIREWALLS MUST BE HIGHLIGHTED ON THE SHEETMETAL DRAWINGS FOR APPROPRIATE COORDINATION.**
  - 5. Shop drawings showing manufacturer's product data shall contain detailed dimensional drawings, accurate and complete description of materials of construction, manufacturer's published performance characteristics and capacity ratings (performance data, alone, is not acceptable), electrical requirements and wiring diagrams. Drawings shall clearly indicate location (terminal block or wire number), voltage and function for all field terminations, and other information necessary to demonstrate compliance with all requirements of Contract Documents.
  - 6. Provide shop drawing submittals showing details of piping and vertical connections to ALL equipment. If connection details are not submitted and connections are found to be installed incorrectly in the field, this contractor shall reinstall them within the original contract price.

C. Acceptable Manufacturers

1. The engineer's mechanical design for each product is based on the single manufacturer listed in the schedule or shown on the drawings. In Part 2 of the specifications certain Alternate Manufacturers are listed as being acceptable.

D. Required Use of Acceptable Manufacturers on this Project

1. Substitution of products other than those of the Acceptable Manufacturers specified herein shall not be made. Only the specified items or the comparable product by one of the specified Alternate Manufacturers shall be submitted. Products by other manufacturers shall not be used on this project.

SHOP DRAWING COVER SHEET	
PROJECT:	CONTRACTOR:
DIVISION NO:	DIVISION NO:
DESCRIPTION:	
CONTRACT DRAWING REFERENCE NO:	
EQUIPMENT TAG:	
SUBMISSION (CIRCLE ONE): FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, FOURTH	
DATE:	

INFORMATION AND CHECKLIST	REPLY	COMMENTS
1. Contractor's Log #ID		
2. Name, address, and phone number of supplier		
3. Are all specified or scheduled items included and exactly match scheduled/specified items?	Yes No	
4. Is this item a substitution?	Yes No	
5. Are deviations clearly identified?	Yes No	
6. Does equipment fit space shown on construction documents, coordination drawings, and actual field conditions?	Yes No	
7. Has support, erection, weights, and installation been coordinated with all trades?	Yes No	
8. Does the proposed installation void warranties and/or violate UL or code requirements?	Yes No	
9. Does this material/equipment add expense to any other trade or project costs?	Yes No	
10. Does equipment require interface with other trades? List divisions and specifics requiring coordination?	Yes No	
11. Is control interface coordinated?	Yes No	

INFORMATION AND CHECKLIST	REPLY	COMMENTS
12. List electrical characteristics (V/Ph/A)		

E. Deviations

1. Concerning deviations other than substitutions, proposed deviations from Contract Documents shall be requested individually, in writing, whether deviations result from field conditions, standard shop practice, or other cause. Submit letter with transmittal of shop drawings, which flags the deviation to the attention of the Architect.
2. Approval of proposed deviations, if any, will be made at discretion of Architect.

F. Responsibility

1. Intent of Submittal review is to check for capacity, rating, and certain construction features. Contractor shall ensure that work meets requirements of Contract Documents regarding information that pertains to fabrication processes or means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction; and for coordination of work of this and other Divisions. Work shall comply with submittals marked "REVIEWED" to extent that they agree with Contract Documents. Submittal review shall not diminish responsibility under this Contract for dimensional coordination, quantities, installation, wiring, supports and access for service, nor shop drawing errors or deviations from requirements of Contract Documents. The architect's noting of some errors while overlooking others will not excuse the contractor from proceeding in error. Contract Documents requirements are not limited, waived nor superseded in any way by review.
2. INFORM SUBCONTRACTORS, MANUFACTURERS, SUPPLIERS, ETC. OF SCOPE AND LIMITED NATURE OF REVIEW PROCESS AND ENFORCE COMPLIANCE WITH CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.

- G. Schedule: Incorporate shop drawing review period into construction schedule so that work is not delayed. Contractor shall assume full responsibility for delays caused by not incorporating the following shop drawing review time requirements into his project schedule. Working days listed reference the time in the Engineer's office. It does not include transmittal or review time of Contractor or Architect. Allow at least 10 working days, exclusive of transmittal time, for review each time shop drawing is submitted or resubmitted.

1.14 WORKING PLANS (fire protection and fire alarm only)

- A. Submit working plans signed and stamped by professional engineer registered in state in which project is located to authorities that have jurisdiction to:
1. Architect.
  2. Engineer.

## 3. Insurance Underwriter.

- B. Submit working plans in one complete package. When it is not possible to submit entire system design in one package due to job conditions, submit plans of entire project indicating area not yet defined.
- C. Working plans will be subject to owner's final approval. Submit to engineer only after review by other authorities.
- D. Pipe sizing shall be based on hydraulic calculations. Submit hydraulic calculations with working plans.
- E. Indicate battery and wire sizing requirements with fire alarm working plan.

## 1.15 HANGERS

- A. Each Contractor shall supply hangers and hanger supports required for piping and equipment installed under this contract.
- B. Hangers shall adequately support the piping system. Hangers shall be installed in accordance with good practice and as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Hanger spacing:

<u>Pipe Size Inches</u>	<u>Maximum Spacing</u>
1 and less	7 feet
1 ¼	8 feet
1 ½	9 feet
2	10 feet
2 ½	11 feet
3	12 feet
4	14 feet
6 to 12"	15 feet
12" to 20"	18 feet

## 1.16 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Contractor shall furnish and set all sleeves, inserts, etc., required for the installation of his work.

## 1.17 FLASHING

- A. Base flashing will be provided by the Contractor and counter flashing shall be provided by the Contractor where work pierces roof construction.

## 1.18 CLEANING

- A. After testing acceptance by Engineer and Owner, Contractor shall thoroughly clean all equipment and material involved in his contract to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

#### 1.19 PAINTING AND FINISHING

- A. Contractor is responsible for completion of painting of all of their installed materials and equipment not factory finished additional miscellaneous painting of their work as directed by the Engineer.

#### 1.20 PIPING – GENERAL

- A. Due to the scale of drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets and fittings which may be required in piping system. Contractor shall furnish all offsets, fittings, valves, traps, specialties and other materials that may be required to meet the conditions without additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Grade water piping of all mechanical systems to avoid pockets and permit systems to be purged of air as well as to be drained.
- C. Do not install joints or fittings over any motor, switchboard or electrical equipment.

#### 1.21 UNIONS AND FLANGES

- A. Install accessible unions and flanges in supply and return connections and other adjacent to all equipment, fixtures, specialties, automatic valves and at all other points in all systems where required to facilitate removal of specialties or equipment for repairs.

#### 1.22 MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL COORDINATION

- A. Contractor shall furnish and install all motors, controllers, starters, pilot lights, float and pressure switches, and control wiring; also other special automatic controls as noted in the Specifications for all equipment furnished under their contracts. This electrical equipment shall be as recommended by the mechanical equipment manufacturer, in accordance with the electrical specifications for similar items, and of such type as to work properly with automatic temperature control sequences where required.
- B. The Contractor shall furnish and install fused disconnect switches and feeders for all motorized equipment under all contracts and make final connection to all motors. Contractor shall wire all of the above items in Paragraphs 1 and 2.

#### 1.23 ELECTRICAL MOTORS AND STARTERS

- A. Mechanical Contractor is responsible, in each instance, for the proper selection of motors and starters of suitable characteristics with details submitted for approval to the Engineer prior to installation.

#### 1.24 INSULATION – GENERAL

- A. Piping and all other insulated items shall be tested approved, cleaned and dried before application of insulation. Insulation shall include all insulating material and their application and finishes as required, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### 1.25 PROTECTION

- A. All openings in pipes, conduits, fittings, duct work, etc., shall be effectively sealed to exclude dirt, sand and other foreign substances.

#### 1.26 TESTS

- A. The following requirements are supplementary to test specified for individual equipment or systems in mechanical and electrical work Divisions.
  - 1. Concealed or insulated work shall remain uncovered until required tests have been completed.
  - 2. Conduct pressure, performance and operating tests as specified or required for each system or equipment unit in presence of the Engineer as well as a representative of agencies having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Obtain certificates of approval and/or acceptance as specified or required in compliance with regulations of agencies having jurisdiction. Work shall not be deemed complete until such certificates have been delivered to the Engineer.
  - 4. Testing shall prove conclusively that all systems operate properly, efficiently and quietly in accordance with intent of drawings and specifications. Each contractor's participation will be required for the life safety acceptance test.
  - 5. Allow 40 hours per trade of the most knowledgeable technician to support testing.

#### 1.27 SERVICING OF EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. After work has been completed under the contract and prior to final acceptance tests, Contractor shall have the manufacturer of the equipment, or their authorized agents, put it into actual operation. In each case, the Contractor shall have the manufacturer thoroughly check the complete installation of the equipment produced by him for proper and correct operation under the services intended.
- B. Contractor shall assure that the owner's personnel are properly instructed in the servicing of the equipment.

#### 1.28 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Contractor shall provide two copies of printed instructions in loose leaf binders to the Engineer upon completion of the installation.

#### 1.29 GUARANTEE

- A. Contractor shall unconditionally guarantee in writing all materials, equipment and workmanship for a period of one year from date of acceptance of systems by Owner as indicated by letter to this effect from Owner to Contractor. Contractor shall provide free service for all equipment involved in contract during this guarantee period.

- B. Guarantee shall include restoration to its original condition of all adjacent work that must be disturbed in fulfilling this guarantee.
- C. All such repairs and/or replacements shall be made without delay and at the convenience of the Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 05 00



**SECTION 22 05 01 - PLUMBING BASIC MATERIALS AND METHODS****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 GENERAL NOTES**

- A. The Conditions of The Contract and Division 1, General Requirements, apply specifically to this Section.
- B. The Contractor shall consult these sections in detail, as he will be responsible for work indicated or governed by conditions set forth therein.

**1.02 SCOPE**

Provide all labor, equipment and materials to accomplish the mechanical work for basic materials and methods as indicated on the drawings, specified in this specifications and/or as necessary to complete other required mechanical work.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 ACCESS PANELS**

- A. Provide access panels of required size for walls, floors and ceilings where required for access to concealed valves, fire dampers, damper operators and controls.
  - 1. Access panels suitable for flush mounting with smooth covers primed for painting except baked enamel finish in tile walls, color as selected by DCR.
  - 2. Panels constructed of 16-gauge steel with 14-gauge doors with concealed hinges and tamper-proof cylinder lock of dual latch type; four (4) keys for locks furnished and delivered to DCR.
  - 3. Panels shall be 24" X 24" minimum except where space requirements require larger.
  - 4. Panels flush mounted in floor shall have 1/4" iron plate with tumbler lock, suitable lift device and flush hinge in handle iron frame.
- B. Manufacturers: Inland Steel Products Co., Milcor, or equal.

**2.02 MOTORS**

- A. Motors shall conform to latest standards of IEEE and NEMA.
- B. Motors shall be designed for 60 HZ alternating current, voltage indicated, rated 40 degrees C. rise for continuous duty and equipped with alignment adjustment.
  - 1. All motors 1/2 HP and larger shall be 3-Phase, 60 HZ operation unless otherwise indicated; connect small motors for 120V-1P-60 Hz.
  - 2. Motor load shall not be less than 75% nor more than 100% of capacity when apparatus to which motors are connected is operating at specified capacity.

3. Nameplate voltage of motor shall be same as voltage indicated and shall define the limit; 5% less of nameplate voltage shall define lower limit. All 3600 rpm motors are to have low noise designed fans.

#### 2.03 MOTOR CONTROL EQUIPMENT

- A. Motor control and starting equipment, including pushbutton and selector switches will be provided by Electrical Contractor except as otherwise indicated or specified herein.
- B. The contractor shall request the Electrical drawings prior to ordering equipment to check for motor control equipment requirements and to meet all requirements specified. Failure to adhere to this requirement, which results in problems, shall be the contractor's responsibility to correct at no additional charge to the Owner.

#### 2.04 WALL SLEEVES

- A. Pipe through floors: Form with 18 gauge galvanized steel.
- B. Pipes through beams, walls, fireproofing, and potentially wet floor: Form with steel pipe or 18 gauge galvanized steel.
- C. Round or rectangular ducts: Form with galvanized steel, 18-gauge.
- D. Size large enough to allow for movement due to expansion and to provide for continuous insulation.

#### 2.05 WALL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. General: Provide link type seals at wall penetrations requiring hydrostatic sealing between pipe and penetration.
- B. Construction: Identical links are molded of solid synthetic rubber. Links are interlocked and connected by corrosion resistant bolts and nuts to form a belt. Under each bolt head and nut is an elongated plastic or metal pressure plate.
- C. Installation: As per manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Manufacturer: Thunderline Corporation "link-Seal".

#### 2.06 FLASHING AND SAFING

- A. Steel Flashing: 26-gauge galvanized steel.
- B. Lead Flashing: 5-lb/sq. ft sheet lead for waterproofing; 1 lb/sq. ft sheet lead to soundproofing.
- C. Safes: 5 lb/sq. ft sheet lead, or 8 mil thick neoprene.
- D. Caps: Steel, 22-gauge minimum, 16-gauge at fire resistance structures.

#### 2.07 FIRE RATED WALL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Seal openings around and between piping with CTC PR-885 fire resistant foam sealant as manufactured by Chase Technology Corp. or approved equal.
- B. Install foam in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Respective Contractor shall install all hangers, supports, pipe sleeves in floors, walls, partitions, ceilings and roof slabs as construction progresses to permit their work to be built into place and to eliminate unnecessary cutting of construction work.
- B. All cutting of concrete, or other material for the passage of piping and ductwork through floors, walls, partitions and ceiling shall be done by the respective Contractor where necessary to install his work. Respective Contractor will close all such openings around piping, ductwork and conduit with materials equivalent to that removed. All exposed surfaces shall be left in suitable condition for refinishing without further work.
- C. Openings in fire rated walls and floors:
  - 1. Where ductwork passes through fire rated walls and floors, install fire dampers as specified in Section 15840.
  - 2. Where piping passes through floor or fire rated walls, seal openings around and between piping with CTC PR-885 fire resistant foam sealant as manufactured by Chase Technology Corp. Install foam in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. No structural member shall be altered, drilled, tapped or cut.

#### 3.02 SAFING INSTALLATION

##### Location

- 1. Provide safing around all penetrations through fire walls/floors.
- 2. Provide safing around all penetrations, which will not be concealed by finish work, such as ceilings, walls, etc.

END OF SECTION 22 05 01

**SECTION 22 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 5. Grout.
  - 6. Silicone sealants.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section “Construction Waste Management.”
  - 2. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Design Requirements – LEEDv4 BD+C.”

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SLEEVES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.

- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- E. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- F. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - 2. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description: Manufactured, galvanized cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
  - 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 4. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
  - 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - c. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.

- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Smooth-On.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

#### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.

1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  5. Use silicone sealant to seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Use grout or silicone sealant to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
  2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:



- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
  - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
  - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
- 5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 22 05 17

**SECTION 22 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
  - 2. Dearborn Brass.
  - 3. Jones Stephens Corp.

**2.2 ESCUTCHEONS**

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

- D. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

## 2.3 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for exposed only piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece cast brass or split-casting brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Insulated Piping: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
    - e. Insulated Piping: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - h. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
    - i. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - j. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - k. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - l. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
    - m. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - n. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - o. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- p. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - q. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - r. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - s. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - t. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
- a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish
  - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- 1. New Piping One-piece, floor plate.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 22 05 18

**SECTION 22 05 19 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Filled-system thermometers.
3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
4. Light-activated thermometers.
5. Thermowells.
6. Dial-type pressure gages.
7. Gage attachments.
8. Test plugs.
9. Test-plug kits.
10. Sight flow indicators.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 221113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for domestic water meters and combined domestic and fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
2. Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for water meters.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

## A. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Terice, H. O. Co.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Plastic; 6-inch nominal size.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and red organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## B. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Flo Fab Inc.
  - b. Miljoco Corporation.
  - c. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Plastic; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and red organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 THERMOWELLS

### A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

### B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

### A. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 6-inch nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa).
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Accuracy: Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- ### A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- ### B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.5 TEST PLUGS

- ### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Flow Design, Inc.
  2. Miljoco Corporation.

- 3. Nexus Valve, Inc.
  - B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
  - C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
  - D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
  - E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
  - F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- J. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- K. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
- L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.



3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be the following:
  1. Plastic case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be the following:
  1. Plastic case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be the following:
  1. Plastic case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be the following:
  1. Plastic case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

### 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F.

### 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be the following:
  1. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be the following:
  1. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be the following:
  1. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.

### 3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

- B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- C. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

END OF SECTION 22 05 19

**SECTION 22 05 23.12 - BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Brass ball valves.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section “Construction Waste Management.”
  - 2. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Design Requirements – LEEDv4 BD+C.”

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
  - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
  - 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
  - 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 4. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
  - 5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
  - 2. Extended operating handles of nonthermal-conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

### 2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Jamesbury; Metso.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- c. Body Design: Two piece.
- d. Body Material: Forged brass.
- e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Full.

B. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Jamesbury; Metso.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Two piece.
  - d. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
  - f. Seats: PTFE.
  - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
  - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - i. Port: Regular.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Chrome Plated Brass Trim:

- 1. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Two-piece.
  - d. Body Material: Bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Seats: PTFE.
  - g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
  - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - i. Port: Regular.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

### 3.4 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE OR LESS

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
  - 1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  - 2. Brass ball valves, one piece.

3. Bronze ball valves, one piece with stainless steel trim.
4. Brass ball valves, two-piece with regular port and stainless steel trim.
5. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with regular port and stainless steel trim.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Steel and Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Steel ball valves, Class 150 with regular port.
3. Iron ball valves, Class 150.

### 3.5 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with regular port and chrome plated brass trim. Provide with threaded, solder, or press connection joint ends.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Steel and Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4; may be provided with sweat press or threaded ends instead of flanged ends.

C. Standard of Design: NIBCO TIS 580-70.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23.12

**SECTION 22 05 23.13 - BUTTERFLY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
  - 2. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
  - 3. Brass, grooved-end butterfly valves.
  - 4. Chainwheels.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
  - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooved ends, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.



- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
  - 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 4. ASME B31.9 for building service piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G for valve materials for potable-water service.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For valves NPS 8 and larger.
  - 2. Handlever: For valves NPS 6 and smaller.
  - 3. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to gear, handlever, or stem; of size and with chain for mounting height, according to "Valve Installation" Article.
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions.

### 2.2 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ABZ Valve and Controls.
    - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - c. Cooper Cameron Valves.
    - d. Victaulic Company.
    - e. NIBCO.
  - 2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
3. Standard of Design: NIBCO LD-2000.

## 2.3 BRASS, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Brass, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, 300 CWP:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.
    - b. Gemlock.
    - c. Viking.
  2. Description:
    - a. CWP Rating: 300 PSIG.
    - b. Body Material: Cast brass.
    - c. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel, offset from the disc centerline to provide complete 360-degree circumferential seating.
    - d. Disc: Aluminum-bronze.
    - e. Seal/Seat: Pressure-responsive EPDM.
  3. Basis of Design: Victaulic Series 608N.

## 2.4 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
  2. Roto Hammer Industries.
  3. Trumbull Industries.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, chain guides, chain, and attachment brackets for mounting chainwheels directly to handwheels.
  1. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile or cast iron, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc or epoxy coating.
  2. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- D. Examine grooved ends for form and cleanliness. Ends shall be clean and free from indentations and projections in the area from valve end to (and including) the groove.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for exposed butterfly valves NPS 8 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
  - 1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
  - 2. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23.13

**SECTION 22 05 23.14 - CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Bronze lift check valves.
  - 2. Bronze swing check valves.
  - 3. Bronze swing check valves, press ends.
  - 4. Iron swing check valves.
  - 5. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
  - 6. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 01 Section “Construction Waste Management.”
  - 2. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Design Requirements – LEEDv4 BD+C.”

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
  - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set check valves in either closed or open position.

- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
  - 5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- E. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- F. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### 2.2 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

- A. Bronze Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 125:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - c. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.

2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
  - f. Disc: NBR, PTFE.

## 2.3 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

### A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.

### B. Bronze Swing Check Valves, Press Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Elkhart Products Corporation.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80 and MSS SP-139.
  - b. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 584, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Press.
  - f. Press Ends Connection Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  - g. Disc: Brass or bronze.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Check Valves: Install check valves for proper direction of flow.
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:



1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring; or iron, center-guided, metal-seat check valves. Standard of Design: F – 9/8 B.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
  2. Standard of Design: NIBCO T413 B.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. End Connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded or soldered or press-ends.
  2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.
  3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.
  4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
  5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.
  6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.
  7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Grooved.
- 3.5 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE 150 PSIG OR LESS
- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Vertical, Upflow Applications Only: Bronze lift check valves with bronze disc, Class 125, with soldered or threaded end connections.
  2. Horizontal and Vertical Applications: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 125, with soldered or threaded end connections.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron swing check valves with nonmetallic-to-metal seats, Class 125, with flanged end connections.
  2. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
  3. Iron, dual-plate check valves with metal seat, Class 125, with flanged end connections.
  4. Iron, single-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 125, with threaded or flanged end connections.
- 3.6 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE
- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 125, with soldered or threaded end connections.
  2. Bronze swing check valves with press-end connections.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 125, with threaded or flanged end connections.
2. Iron swing check valves with closure control lever and weight, Class 125, with threaded or flanged end connections.
3. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
4. Iron, center-guided check valves with compact wafer, Class 125.
5. Iron, center-guided check valves with metal seat, Class 125, with threaded or flanged end connections.
6. Iron, single-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 125, with threaded or flanged end connections.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23.14

**SECTION 22 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Metal framing systems.
  - 4. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
  - 5. Fastener systems.
  - 6. Pipe stands.
  - 7. Pipe-positioning systems.
  - 8. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

- 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 2. Metal framing systems.
  - 3. Fiberglass strut systems.
  - 4. Pipe stands.
  - 5. Equipment supports.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

- 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  - 2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

#### 2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated or epoxy powder coated.
  - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

### 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.4 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Buckaroos, Inc.
  - 2. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  - 3. Clement Support Services.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig, ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

### 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hilti, Inc.
    - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - c. MKT Fastening, LLC.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
    - b. Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - c. Hilti, Inc.

2. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel.

## 2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand:
  1. Description: Single base unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
  3. Hardware: Galvanized steel or polycarbonate.
  4. Accessories: Protection pads.
- C. Low-Profile, Single-Base, Single-Pipe Stand:
  1. Description: Single base with vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane protection.
  2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
  3. Vertical Members: Two galvanized-steel, continuous-thread, 1/2-inch rods.
  4. Horizontal Member: Adjustable horizontal, galvanized-steel pipe support channels.
  5. Pipe Supports: Clevis hanger.
  6. Hardware: Galvanized steel.
  7. Accessories: Protection pads.
  8. Height: 12 inches above roof.

## 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- B. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- C. Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-58. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- F. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types, except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
  - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

- H. Pipe-Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- I. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- P. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal hanger-shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.



- c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
  - 6. Thermal Hanger Shields: Install with insulation of same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded, shop-painted areas on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.

9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
  18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation, in addition to expansion and contraction, is required.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment of up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11 split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.

4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- R. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 22 05 29

**SECTION 22 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS**

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.

- c. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - 2. Material and Thickness: anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 3. Letter Color: White.
  - 4. Background Color: White.
  - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
  - 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
  - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - c. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - 2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 3. Letter Color: Black.
  - 4. Background Color: White.
  - 5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  - 6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
  - 8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
  - 9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Black.
- D. Background Color: Yellow.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
  - 2. Brady Corporation.
  - 3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.



- E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping, at least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

## 2.4 STENCILS

### A. Stencils for Piping:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - c. Champion America.
- 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping, at least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
- 3. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
- 4. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
- 5. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

## 2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
  - 2. Brady Corporation.
  - 3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
- B. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or

space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  3. Carlton Industries, LP.
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Safety yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Domestic Water Piping
    - a. Background: Safety green.
    - b. Letter Colors: White.
  - 2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Safety white.
    - b. Letter Color: Black.

### 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, square.

- b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, square.
  - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches, square.
- 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
  - a. Cold Water: Safety green.
  - b. Hot Water: Safety green.
  - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Safety blue.
- 3. Letter Colors:
  - a. Cold Water: White.
  - b. Hot Water: White.
  - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: White.

### 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 22 05 53

**SECTION 22 07 19 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
  - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
  - 4. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
  - 5. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
  - 6. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
  - 7. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
2. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
  1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation.
  - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  - 4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  - 5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.

6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. K-Flex USA.
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
    - c. Manson Insulation Inc.
  2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

## 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:



- a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- E. Phenolic Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dow Consumer Solutions.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.

## 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.

- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.

## 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - c. Vimasco Corporation.
3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

### A. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass and Phenolic Products:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.

### B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Foster Brand; H.B. Fuller Construction Products
  - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Foster Brand; H.B. Fuller Construction Products
  - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Alpha Associates, Inc.

## 2.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.
    - c. Proto Corporation.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. Color: White.
  4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.
  2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

- a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
  - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.
    - 5) End caps.
    - 6) Beveled collars.
    - 7) Valve covers.
    - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
  - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.
    - 5) End caps.
    - 6) Beveled collars.
    - 7) Valve covers.
    - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation.
    - b. Polyguard Products, Inc.

## 2.10 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
    - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 500 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 5 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.



P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  - 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  - 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  - 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  - 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

#### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
  - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
  - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.9 FINISHES

- A. Painting by G.C.
- B. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- D. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- E. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  2. Underground piping.
  3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.12 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold Water, HW, AND HWR:
  1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
  2. NPS 2" and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
  1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
  2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- C. Domestic Chilled Water (Potable):
  1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- D. Stormwater and Overflow:
  1. All Pipe Sizes (Horizontal Piping Only): Insulation shall be the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
  - E. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
    - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
  - F. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
    - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
  - G. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:
    - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inches thick.
  - H. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
    - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
- 3.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE
- A. Domestic Water Piping:
    - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
  - B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
    - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
  - C. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:
    - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
- 3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE
- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
  - B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. PVC.

3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. Painted, Aluminum, Corrugated with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.024 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 22 07 19



**SECTION 22 11 16 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Copper tube and fittings.
  - 2. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
  - 3. Galvanized steel pipe and fittings.
  - 4. Stainless-steel piping
  - 5. Piping joining materials.
  - 6. Dielectric fittings.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 221113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.

### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and ASTM B 88, Type M water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Copper Unions:
  - 1. MSS SP-123.
  - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
  - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
  - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- G. Copper, Brass, or Bronze Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Elkhart Products Corporation.
    - c. Mueller Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Fittings: Cast-brass, cast-bronze or wrought-copper with EPDM O-ring seal in each end. Sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger with stainless steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal.
  - 3. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.
- H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International.
    - b. Apollo-Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc.
    - c. Grinnell Mechanical Products.

2. Bronze Fittings for Grooved-End, Copper Tubing: ASTM B 75/B 75M copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
  - a. Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606.
  - b. Ferrous housing sections.
  - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
  - d. Bolts and nuts.
  - e. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

## 2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

### A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

### B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

### C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

### D. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51.
2. Push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.

### E. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

### F. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

### G. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.

### H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Apollo-Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc.
  - b. Smith-Cooper International.
  - c. Star Pipe Products.
2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions that match pipe.
3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping:
  - a. AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions.
  - b. Ferrous housing sections.
  - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
  - d. Bolts and nuts.

#### 2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

##### A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

1. ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Standard Weight.
2. Include ends matching joining method.

##### B. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

##### C. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

##### D. Malleable-Iron Unions:

1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
2. Hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.
4. Threaded ends.

##### E. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

##### F. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. Apollo-Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc.
  - c. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Galvanized, ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106/A 106M, steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
3. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

- a. AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions.
- b. Ferrous housing sections.
- c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
- d. Bolts and nuts.
- e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
  - 1) NPS 8 and Smaller: 600 psig.
  - 2) NPS 10 and NPS 12: 400 psig.
  - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24: 250 psig.

## 2.5 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPING

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 Annex G.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Schedule 10.
- C. Stainless-Steel Pipe Fittings: ASTM A 815/A 815M.
- D. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International.
    - b. Apollo-Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc.
    - c. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - 2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe: Stainless-steel casting with dimensions matching stainless-steel pipe.
  - 3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
    - a. AWWA C606 for stainless-steel-pipe dimensions.
    - b. Stainless-steel housing sections.
    - c. Stainless-steel bolts and nuts.
    - d. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
    - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:

## 2.6 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
  - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

## 2.8 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
  - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Dresser, Inc.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).

## 2.9 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
    - b. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  - 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

## C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
  - b. Central Plastics Company.
  - c. Matco-Norca.
2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

## D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - b. Calpico, Inc.
  - c. Central Plastics Company.
2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

## E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Elster Perfection Corporation.
  - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - c. Matco-Norca.
2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- H. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.



- N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- Q. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- R. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- T. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heat exchanger. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools and procedure recommended by pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.
- G. Push-on Joints for Copper Tubing: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.
- H. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2144. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- I. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- J. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- K. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Steel Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of pipe as specified. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- L. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- M. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.4 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
  8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- I. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.

4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.

- J. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 15 feet.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
  4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. Piping Inspections:
    - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

- 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
  - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Piping Tests:
- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
  - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
    - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
  5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
  6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.

7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### 3.10 CLEANING

#### A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
  - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
  - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
    - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
    - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
  - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
  - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
  - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
  - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
  - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

#### C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

#### D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- #### A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, brazed, copper pressure-seal fittings, pressure-sealed joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8, shall be the following:
  - 1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard or compact-pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  - 2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard or compact-pattern, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - 3. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- F. Under-building-slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be the following:
  - 1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard or compact-pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  - 2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard or compact-pattern, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - 3. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- G. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L, ASTM B 88, Type M, cast or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - 3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
- I. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L, ASTM B 88, Type M; cast or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed, soldered joints.

2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
4. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
5. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

### 3.12 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
  4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16



**SECTION 22 11 19 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Strainers.
6. Outlet boxes.
7. Hose stations.
8. Hose bibbs.
9. Wall hydrants.
10. Drain valves.
11. Water-hammer arresters.
12. Air vents.
13. Trap-seal primer valves.
14. Trap-seal primer systems.
15. Flexible connectors.
16. Water meters.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 220519 "Meters and Gauges for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
3. Section 224713 "Drinking Fountains" for water filters for water coolers.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
  1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 and NSF 14.
- B. Comply with NSF 372 for low lead.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
  - 1. Standard: ASSE 1001.
  - 2. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
  - 3. Body: Bronze.
  - 4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
  - 5. Finish: Chrome plated.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
  - 1. Standard: ASSE 1011.
  - 2. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
  - 3. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  - 4. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.
- C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:
  - 1. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - 2. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
- D. Spill-Resistant Vacuum Breakers:
  - 1. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.

2. Size: NPS ¼, NPS 3/8, NPS ½.

## 2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

### A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1012.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Size: NPS 1/2.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.

### B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1013.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, steel with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
7. Accessories:
  - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
  - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
  - c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

### C. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

1. Standard: ASSE 1015.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, steel with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
7. Accessories:
  - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
  - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.

### D. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1024.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Size: NPS ½, NPS ¾.

4. Body: Bronze with union inlet.

E. Reduced-Pressure-Detector, Fire-Protection, Backflow-Preventer Assemblies:

1. Standard: ASSE 1047 and is FM Global approved or UL listed.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: 10 psig.
4. Body: Cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved. Steel with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, stainless steel.
5. End Connections: Flanged.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
7. Accessories:
  - a. Valves: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
  - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.
  - c. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

F. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1048 and is FM Global approved or UL listed.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Body: Cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved. Steel with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved. Stainless steel.
5. End Connections: Flanged.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
7. Accessories:
  - a. Valves: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
  - b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

G. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1052.
2. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
3. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
4. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

H. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:

1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

## 2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

### A. Water Regulators:

1. Standard: ASSE 1003.
2. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
3. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
4. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

### B. Water-Control Valves:

1. Description: Pilot-operated, diaphragm-type, single-seated, main water-control valve.
2. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig minimum with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot-control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
3. Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.

## 2.6 BALANCING VALVES

### A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
2. Body: Brass or bronze.
3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
4. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2.

## 2.7 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
  - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.033 inch.
  - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, 0.062 inch.
  - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.125 inch.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

## 2.8 OUTLET BOXES

### A. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

1. Mounting: Recessed.
2. Material and Finish: Epoxy-painted-steel, epoxy box and faceplate.
3. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
4. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

## 2.9 HOSE STATIONS

### A. Single-Temperature-Water Hose Stations:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1.
2. Cabinet: Stainless-steel enclosure with exposed valve handle, hose connection, and hose rack. Include thermometer in front.
3. Hose-Rack Material: Stainless steel.
4. Body Material: Bronze with stainless-steel wetted parts.
5. Body Finish: Rough bronze, chrome plated.
6. Mounting: Wall, with reinforcement.
7. Supply Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and check valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing. Omit check valve if check stop is included with fitting.
8. Hose: Manufacturer's standard, for service fluid, temperature, and pressure; 25 feet long.
9. Nozzle: With hand-squeeze, on-off control.
10. Vacuum Breaker:
  - a. Integral or factory-installed, nonremovable, manual-drain-type, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
  - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

### B. Hot- and Cold-Water Hose Stations:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1.
2. Faucet Type: Thermostatic mixing valve.
3. Cabinet: Stainless-steel enclosure with exposed valve handles, hose connection, and hose rack. Include thermometer in front.
4. Hose-Rack Material: Stainless steel.
5. Body Material: Bronze with stainless-steel wetted parts.
6. Body Finish: Chrome plate.
7. Mounting: Wall, with reinforcement.
8. Supply Fittings: Two NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and check valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing. Omit check valves if check stops are included with fitting.
9. Hose: Manufacturer's standard, for service fluid, temperature, and pressure; 25 feet long.
10. Nozzle: With hand-squeeze, on-off control.
11. Vacuum Breaker: Integral or factory-installed, nonremovable, manual-drain-type, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer

complying with ASSE 1052; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

## 2.10 HOSE BIBBS

### A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral or field-installation, nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Chrome or nickel plated.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Wheel handle.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

## 2.11 WALL HYDRANTS

### A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
3. Operation: Loose key.
4. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
6. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
8. Box and Cover Finish: Chrome plated.
9. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
10. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
11. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

## 2.12 DRAIN VALVES

### A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.

2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

B. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for ball valves or MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 200-psig minimum CWP or Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy or ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Drain: NPS 1/8 side outlet with cap.

## 2.13 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
2. Type: Metal bellows, copper tube with piston.
3. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## 2.14 AIR VENTS

A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Stainless steel.
2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig minimum pressure rating.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.



## 2.15 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

### A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Standard: ASSE 1018.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
5. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
6. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

### B. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Standard: ASSE 1044, lavatory P-trap with NPS 3/8) minimum, trap makeup connection.
2. Size: NPS 1-1/4 minimum.
3. Material: Chrome-plated, cast brass.

## 2.16 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER SYSTEMS

### A. Trap-Seal Primer Systems:

1. Standard: ASSE 1044.
2. Piping: NPS 3/4, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper, water tubing.
3. Cabinet: Recessed or surface-mounted steel box with stainless-steel cover.
4. Electric Controls: 24-hour timer, solenoid valve, and manual switch for 120-V ac power.
  - a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
5. Vacuum Breaker: ASSE 1001.
6. Number Outlets: Up to eight.
7. Size Outlets: NPS 1/2.

## 2.17 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

### A. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.

### B. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.

3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

## 2.18 WATER METERS

### A. Turbine-Type Water Meters:

1. Standard: AWWA C701.
2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig working pressure.
3. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
4. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
5. Case: Bronze.
6. End Connections for Meters NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
7. End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

### B. Compound-Type Water Meters:

1. Standard: AWWA C702.
2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
3. Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
4. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
5. Case: Bronze.
6. Pipe Connections: Flanged.

### C. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

#### A. Backflow Preventers: Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

#### B. Water Regulators: Install with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

#### C. Water Control Valves: Install with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

- D. Automatic Water Shutoff Valves: Test for signal strength before valve installation. Install automatic shutoff valve downstream from main domestic water shutoff valve and downstream from fire sprinkler system supply. Install valve controller in an accessible location with sensors in areas where water is likely to accumulate.
- E. Balancing Valves: Install in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- F. Temperature-Actuated, Water Mixing Valves: Install with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  - 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- G. Y-Pattern Strainers: For water, install on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve and pump.
- H. Water-Hammer Arresters: Install in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- I. Air Vents: Install vents at high points of water piping.
- J. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device: Install with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- K. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device: Install as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.
- L. Trap-Seal Primer Systems: Install with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping specialties adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Comply with requirements for grounding equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
  - 3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 4. Double-check, backflow-prevention assemblies.

5. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
  6. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
  7. Reduced-pressure-detector, fire-protection, backflow-preventer assemblies.
  8. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
  9. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  10. Automatic water shutoff valves.
  11. Primary water tempering valves.
  12. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
  13. Trap-seal primer systems.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 22 11 19

**SECTION 22 13 16 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
4. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
5. Copper tube and fittings.
6. MG Cast Iron Couplings.
7. Polypropylene pipe and fittings.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 221313 "Facility Sanitary Sewers" for sanitary sewerage piping and structures outside the building.
2. Section 221329 "Sanitary Sewerage Pumps" for effluent and sewage pumps.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals.
- C. Shop Drawings: For hubless, single-stack drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Construction Manager's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
  - 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig.

### 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Single-Stack Aerator Fittings: ASME B16.45, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conine Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - b. SE Sovent.
- C. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. ANACO-Husky.
  - b. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
  - c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

D. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
  - b. MG Piping Products Company.
2. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
3. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Type DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M, water tube, drawn temper.
- D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- E. Copper Pressure Fittings:
  1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
  1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
  2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

## 2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- C. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
- D. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- E. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
- F. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

## 2.6 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
  - 2. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
      - 2) Fernco Inc.
      - 3) Froet Industries LLC.
    - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
    - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - d. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
    - e. Sleeve Materials:
      - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
      - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
      - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
  - 1. Dielectric Unions:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:



- 1) A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - 3) Central Plastics Company.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
2. Dielectric Flanges:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - 2) Central Plastics Company.
    - 3) Matco-Norca.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - 3) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
3. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - 2) Calpico, Inc.
    - 3) Central Plastics Company.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
4. Dielectric Nipples:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Elster Perfection Corporation.
    - 2) Grinnell Mechanical Products.

3) Josam Company.

b. Description:

- 1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
- 2) Electroplated steel nipple.
- 3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
- 4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- 5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
  2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

- K. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
  - 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
  - 2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.
    - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.
  - 3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
  - 4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
    - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
  - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
  - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
  - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated and per Philadelphia Plumbing Code:
  - 1. Building Sanitary Waste: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- O. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
- P. Install stainless-steel piping according to ASME A112.3.1 and applicable plumbing code.
- Q. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- R. Install engineered soil and waste and vent piping systems as follows:
  - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Hubless, Single-Stack Drainage System: Comply with ASME B16.45 and hubless, single-stack aerator fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  - 3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- S. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600.
  - 1. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside building with restrained joints.

2. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
  3. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- T. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- U. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- V. Plumbing Specialties:
1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
    - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  3. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- B. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  2. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

- a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
  - c. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- C. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- D. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- E. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
- F. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendixes.
  - 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendixes

### 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
  - 2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
  - 3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
  - 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
  - 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
  - 3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
  - 4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping,"
- B. Shutoff Valves:
  - 1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
  - 2. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.

3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
  1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
  3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
  4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  3. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
  4. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  5. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  6. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  7. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  7. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
  8. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- J. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.

6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
7. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.
  - a. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection.
  - b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

D. Connect force-main piping to the following:

1. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.

E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.



- a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
    - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water.
    - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
    - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
  4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
    - a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg.
    - b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
    - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
    - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.
    - a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours.
    - b. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

### 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller in return air plenum ceilings shall be the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and hubless, single-stack aerator fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger in return air plenum ceilings shall be the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and hubless, single-stack aerator fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller in return air plenum ceilings shall be the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
  - 4. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  - 5. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
    - a. Option for Vent Piping, NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3-1/2: Hard copper tube, Type M; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
- F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed, calking materials; and calked joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty, cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints including MG Couplings.
  3. Cellular-core PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed, calking materials; and calked joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty, cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; coupled joints including MG Couplings.
  3. Cellular-core PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- H. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 in return air plenum ceilings shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
- I. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 in return air plenum ceilings shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
  3. Grooved-end, galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- J. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
1. Hard and Soft copper tube, Type L; wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
  3. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
  4. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION 22 13 16

**SECTION 22 13 19 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Backwater valves.
2. Cleanouts.
3. Air-admittance valves.
4. Roof flashing assemblies.
5. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
6. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
7. FOG disposal systems.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for trench drains for storm water, channel drainage systems for storm water, roof drains, and catch basins.
2. Section 224300 "Healthcare Plumbing Fixtures" for plaster sink interceptors.
3. Section 334200 "Stormwater Conveyance" for storm drainage piping and piping specialties outside the building.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
  1. FOG disposal systems.
- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.
2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Data: For FOG disposal systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 2.2 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
    - b. Josam Company.
    - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
  3. Size: Same as connected piping.
  4. Body: Cast iron.

5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
6. End Connections: Hub and spigot, hub and spigot or hubless, hubless.
7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed, open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

1. Manufacturers:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. WATTS.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
3. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
5. Inlet: Threaded.
6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

## 2.3 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch, hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

B. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. Oatey.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing, cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing, cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule.

5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Not required.
7. Outlet Connection: Inside calk, spigot.
8. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Rough bronze.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch, hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug:
  - a. Brass.
  - b. Countersunk head.
  - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
  - d. Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
7. Wall Access: Round, stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

## 2.4 AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES

A. Fixture Air-Admittance Valves:

1. Manufacturers:
  - a. Ayrlett, LLC.
  - b. Durgo, Inc.
  - c. Oatey.
2. Standard: ASSE 1051, Type A for single fixture or Type B for branch piping.
3. Housing: Plastic.
4. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
5. Size: Same as connected fixture or branch vent piping.

## 2.5 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

### A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
  - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 6 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
  - a. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
  - b. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
  - c. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

## 2.6 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

### A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve-and-stack fitting with firestopping plug.
3. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
4. Sleeve: Molded-PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564 rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

### B. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.



2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
  - a. NPS 2: 4-inch-minimum water seal.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch-minimum water seal.
- C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:
  1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
  2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.
- D. Air-Gap Fittings:
  1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
  2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
  3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
  4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
  5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- E. Sleeve Flashing Device:
  1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
  2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.
- F. Stack Flashing Fittings:
  1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
  2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- G. Vent Caps:
  1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
  2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- H. Frost-Resistant Vent Terminals:
  1. Description: Manufactured or shop-fabricated assembly constructed of copper, lead-coated copper, or galvanized steel.
  2. Design: To provide 1-inch enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.
- I. Expansion Joints:

1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- D. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping where shown.
- E. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof. Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof. Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- G. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch above floor.
- H. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- I. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- J. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- L. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.

- M. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- N. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors where shown. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- O. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

### 3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
  - 1. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections, and prepare test reports.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled lab waste and their installation, including piping and electrical connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lab waste disposal systems. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 22 13 19

## **SECTION 22 13 19.13 - SANITARY DRAINS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Floor drains.
  - 2. Floor sinks.
  - 3. Trench drains.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene styrene.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.
- D. PE: Polyethylene.
- E. PP: Polypropylene.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

## 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

### A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Commercial Enameling Company.
  - b. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - c. WATTS.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Not required.
6. Anchor Flange: Not required.
7. Clamping Device: Not required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Not required.
10. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
11. Top or Strainer Material: Stainless steel.
12. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Stainless steel.
13. Top Shape: Round.
14. Funnel: Not required.
15. Inlet Fitting: Not required.
16. Trap Material: Cast iron.
17. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install floor drains as shown on drawings. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
  3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
  4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange, so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring.
    - a. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.

5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, air admittance devices and miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 221323 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors" for grease interceptors, grease-removal devices, oil interceptors, sand interceptors, and solid interceptors.
- D. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- E. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- F. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19.13

**SECTION 22 14 13 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - 3. PVC pipe and fittings.
  - 4. Specialty pipe and fittings.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof drainage system. Include calculations, plans, and details.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Detail storm drainage piping. Show support locations, type of support, weight on each support, required clearances, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Structural members to which drainage piping will be attached or suspended from.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

**1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:



1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of storm drainage service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of storm drainage service without Construction Manager's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.

### 2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. AB & I Foundry; a part of the McWane family of companies.
  2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
  3. NewAge Casting.
- B. Pipe and Fittings:
  1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
  2. Class: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- C. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- D. Caulking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
  2. NewAge Casting.
  3. Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies.
- B. Pipe and Fittings:
  1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
  2. Standard: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- C. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
  - b. Fernco Inc.
  - c. Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
2. Couplings shall bear CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
3. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
4. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

D. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
  - b. MG Piping Products Company.
2. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
3. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. NSF Marking: Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic storm drain and "NSF-sewer" for plastic storm sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665; drain, waste, and vent.
- C. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
- D. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- E. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.

2.5 Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

2.6 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.

3. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
  - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - d. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
  1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
  2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

- J. Make changes in direction for piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
  - 1. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
  - 2. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
    - a. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building piping beginning at low point of each system.
  - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
  - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
  - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Storm Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Storm Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- N. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
- O. Install engineered drain specialties and storm drainage piping in locations indicated.
- P. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- Q. Install underground [ABS] [and] [PVC] piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- R. Retain first paragraph below if ductile-iron, force-main piping is required.
- S. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- T. Plumbing Specialties:
  - 1. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping where shown on drawings.
  - 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping.
    - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

3. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
  - U. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
    1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
  - W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
    1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
  - B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Caulked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum caulked joints.
  - C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints:
    1. Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
  - D. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fittings. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
  - E. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
  - F. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendices.
    3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendices.
- 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION
- A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
3. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
4. In Underground Force-Main Piping:
  - a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
  - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements for general-duty valve installations are specified in the following Sections:
  1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  2. Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  3. Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves:
  1. Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
  2. Install full port ball valve] for piping NS 2 and smaller.
  3. Install ball valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing-check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
  1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
  3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  3. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
  4. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  5. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.

- c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
- 6. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
- 7. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
  - 6. Spacing for 10-foot pipe lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
  - 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 2. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
  - 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
  - 1. Storm Sewer: To exterior force main.
  - 2. Sump Pumps: To sump pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
  2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
    - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Test Procedure:
    - a. Test storm drainage piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in.
    - b. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- C. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:



1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.
    - a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- D. Piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller in return air plenums shall be the following:
  1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- C. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  1. Extra Heavy or Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, cast-iron, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

END OF SECTION 22 14 13

**SECTION 22 14 23 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal roof drains.
  - 2. Plastic roof drains.
  - 3. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
  - 4. Cleanouts.
  - 5. Backwater valves.
  - 6. Trench drains.
  - 7. Channel drainage systems.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for penetrations of roofs.
  - 2. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping roof penetrations.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS**

- A. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains <Insert drawing designation if any>:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. Marathon Roofing Products.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-to 16-inch diameter.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required.
6. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Outlet Type: No hub.
9. Extension Collars: Not required.
10. Underdeck Clamp: Not required.
11. Expansion Joint: Not required.
12. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required.
13. Dome Material: Cast iron.
14. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required].
15. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
16. Water Dam: Not required.

## 2.2 CLEANOUTS

### A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. WATTS.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Body Material: No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head; or brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.

### B. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. Oatey.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing.

5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Not required.
7. Outlet Connection: No hub.
8. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
9. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Painted cast iron.
10. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
11. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
12. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug:
  - a. Brass.
  - b. Countersunk or raised head.
  - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
  - d. Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
7. Wall Access: Round, stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

D. Test Tees:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A 74, ASTM A 888, or CISPI 301.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or no-hub, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug: Countersunk or raised head, brass.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.

## 2.3 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Cast-Iron, Horizontal Backwater Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. WATTS.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
3. Size: Same as connected piping.
4. Body Material: Cast iron.
5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
6. End Connections: no hub.
7. Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed.
8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

## 2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

### A. Trench Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Neenah Foundry Company.
  - c. WATTS.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Flange: Anchor.
5. Clamping Device: Not required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Outlet Type: Inside caulk.
8. Grate Material: stainless steel.
9. Grate Finish: Not required.
10. Top-Loading Classification: Medium Duty.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.

3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet (30 m) for larger piping.
  4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical storm piping conductor.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.
- F. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in outlet of drains.
- G. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
- H. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies for penetrations of fire- and smoke-rated assemblies.
  1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 14 23

**SECTION 22 42 13.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Water closets.
  - 2. Flushometer valves and tanks.
  - 3. Toilet seats.
  - 4. Supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 224600 "Security Plumbing Fixtures" for security water closets.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Effective Flush Volume: Average of two reduced flushes and one full flush per fixture.
- B. Remote Water Closet: Located more than 30 feet from other drain line connections or fixture and where less than 1.5 drainage fixture units are upstream of the drain line connection.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.



## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: No fewer than one of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WALL-MOUNTED WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets: Wall mounted, top spud.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capizzi.
    - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
    - c. Kohler Co.
  - 2. Bowl:
    - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
    - b. Material: Vitreous china.
    - c. Type: Siphon jet.
    - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
    - e. Height: Standard.
    - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
    - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
    - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.

### 2.2 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

- A. Solenoid-Actuator, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Delany Products.
    - b. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - c. Sloan Valve Company.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
  - 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
  - 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
  - 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
  - 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
  - 7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
  - 8. Style: Exposed.

9. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
10. Trip Mechanism: Battery-powered electronic sensor complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
11. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
12. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
13. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

## 2.3 TOILET SEATS

### A. Toilet Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
  - b. Church Seats; Bemis Manufacturing Company.
  - c. TOTO USA, INC.
2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
3. Material: Plastic.
4. Type: Commercial.
5. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
6. Hinge: Check.
7. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal.
8. Seat Cover: Not required.
9. Color: White.

## 2.4 SUPPORTS

### A. Water Closet Carrier:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
3. Description: Waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. Water-Closet Installation:

- 1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- 2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
- 3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

#### B. Support Installation:

- 1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
- 2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
- 3. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate, onto waste-fitting seals; and attach to support.
- 4. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.

#### C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

- 1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
- 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
- 3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
- 4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- 5. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

#### D. Install toilet seats on water closets.

#### E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

- 1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
- 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
- 3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

## F. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 13.13

**SECTION 22 42 13.16 - COMMERCIAL URINALS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Urinals.
  - 2. Flushometer valves.
  - 3. Supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 224600 "Security Plumbing Fixtures" for security urinals.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: No fewer than one of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

- A. Urinals: Wall hung, back outlet, blowout.
  - 1. Waste Fitting:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
    - b. Size: NPS 2.
  - 2. Support: Type I Urinal Carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.
  - 3. Urinal Mounting Height: Standard; Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.

### 2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES

- A. Hard-Wired, Solenoid-Actuator, Piston Flushometer Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - b. Moen Incorporated.
    - c. Sloan Valve Company.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
  - 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
  - 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
  - 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
  - 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
  - 7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
  - 8. Style: Exposed.
  - 9. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
  - 10. Trip Mechanism: Hard-wired electronic sensor complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
  - 11. Consumption: 0.5 gal. per flush.
  - 12. Minimum Inlet: NPS ¾.
  - 13. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

### 2.3 SUPPORTS

- A. Type I Urinal Carrier:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.](#)
  - b. [Josam Company.](#)
  - c. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

##### A. Urinal Installation:

1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

##### B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
3. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
4. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.

##### C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.

##### D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

##### E. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 13.16



**SECTION 22 42 16.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

1. Lavatories.
2. Faucets.
3. Supply fittings.
4. Waste fittings.
5. Supports.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 224600 "Security Plumbing Fixtures" for security lavatories.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, COUNTER-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory: Rectangular, self-rimming, vitreous china, counter mounted.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard.
    - b. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - c. Kohler Co.
  2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
    - b. Type: Self-rimming for above-counter mounting.
    - c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, see schedule for dimensions.
    - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole.
    - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
    - f. Color: White.
    - g. Mounting Material: Sealant.
  3. Faucet: See schedule.

### 2.2 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory: Vitreous china, wall mounted, with back.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - b. FNW; Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.
    - c. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.

2. Fixture:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
  - b. Type: For wall hanging.
  - c. Nominal Size: See schedule.
  - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole.
  - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
  - f. Color: White.
  - g. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
3. Faucet: See schedule.
4. Lavatory Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.

### 2.3 SOLID-BRASS, AUTOMATICALLY OPERATED LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Lavatory Faucets: Automatic-type, hard-wired, electronic-sensor-operated, mixing, solid-brass valve.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bradley Corporation.
    - b. Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
    - c. GROHE America, Inc.
  2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
  3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  4. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
  5. Body Type: Single hole.
  6. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
  7. Finish: Polished chrome plate
  8. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
  9. Mounting Type: Deck, concealed.
  10. Spout: Rigid type.
  11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.
  12. Drain: Not part of faucet.

### 2.4 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.
- F. Risers:
  - 1. NPS 3/8.
  - 2. Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube riser.

## 2.5 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
  - 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
  - 2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.
  - 3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

## 2.6 SUPPORTS

- A. Type II Lavatory Carrier:
  - 1. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.
- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 16.13

**SECTION 22 42 16.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

1. Service basins.
2. Service sinks.
3. Utility sinks.
4. Handwash sinks.
5. Sink faucets.
6. Supports.
7. Supply fittings.
8. Waste fittings.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics and furnished specialties and accessories.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For sinks to include in maintenance manuals.

**1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SERVICE BASINS

#### A. Service Basins: Terrazzo, floor mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
  - b. Floestone Products Co., Inc.
  - c. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
2. Fixture:
  - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 99.
  - b. Shape: Square.
  - c. Nominal Size: 30 by 30 inches.
  - d. Height: 6 inches.
  - e. Tiling Flange: Not required.
  - f. Rim Guard: On front top surfaces.
  - g. Color: Not applicable.
  - h. Drain: Grid with NPS 2 outlet.
3. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.
4. Faucet: See schedule.

### 2.2 SERVICE SINKS

#### A. Service Sinks: Vitreous china, trap standard mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
  - b. Kohler Co.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Fixture:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
  - b. Type: Service sink with back.
  - c. Back: Two faucet holes.
  - d. Nominal Size: 22 by 20 inches.

- e. Color: White.
  - f. Mounting: NPS 2 P-trap standard with grid strainer inlet, cleanout, and floor flange.
  - g. Rim Guard: On front and sides.
- 3. Faucet: See schedule.
  - 4. Support: Type II sink carrier.
  - 5. Lavatory Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.

## 2.3 UTILITY SINKS

### A. Utility Sinks: Stainless steel, counter mounted.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Eagle Group.
  - b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
  - c. Griffin Products, Inc.
- 2. Fixture:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
  - b. Type: Ledge back.
  - c. Number of Compartments: One.
  - d. Overall Dimensions: See schedule.
  - e. Metal Thickness: 0.050 inch.
  - f. Compartment:
    - 1) Dimensions: See schedule.
    - 2) Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 tailpiece and twist drain.
    - 3) Drain Location: Centered in compartment.
  - g. Each Compartment:
    - 1) Dimensions: See schedule.
    - 2) Drains: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 tailpiece and twist drain.
    - 3) Drain Location: Centered in compartment.
- 3. Faucet(s): See schedule.
  - a. Number Required: One.
  - b. Mounting: On ledge.
- 4. Supply Fittings:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
  - b. Supplies: Chrome-plated brass compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
    - 1) Operation: Loose key.



- 2) Risers: NPS 1/2, chrome-plated, rigid-copper pipe.
5. Waste Fittings:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
  - b. Trap(s):
    - 1) Size: NPS 1-1/2.
    - 2) Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.
    - 3) Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.
  - c. Continuous Waste:
    - 1) Size: NPS 1-1/2.
    - 2) Material: Chrome-plated, 0.032-inch-thick brass tube.
6. Mounting: On counter with sealant.

## 2.4 HANDWASH SINKS

### A. Handwash Sinks: Stainless steel, wall mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Advance Tabco.
  - b. Eagle Group.
  - c. Griffin Products, Inc.
2. Fixture:
  - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 and NSF/ANSI 2.
  - b. Type: Basin with radius corners, back for faucet, and support brackets.
  - c. Nominal Size: See schedule.
3. Faucet: See schedule.
4. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
5. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
6. Support: Type II sink carrier.
7. Lavatory Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.

## 2.5 SINK FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Sink Faucets: Manual type, single control mixing valve.

## 1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) American Standard.
- 2) Just Manufacturing.
- 3) Moen Incorporated.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Centerset.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.2 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Lever.
9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Rigid, solid brass.
11. Vacuum Breaker: Not required for hose outlet.
12. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

## C. Sink Faucets: Automatic, sensor-operated type, 120 V ac hard-wired, mixing valve.

## 1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) Delta Faucet Company.
- 2) T&S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- 3) Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Centerset.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
8. Mounting Type: Deck.
9. Spout Type: Rigid spout.
10. Spout Outlet: Aerator.
11. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: Above deck, with check valves.
12. Control module: Above deck, water-resistant module with internal flow setting switches.

## 2.6 SUPPORTS

## A. Type II Sink Carrier:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Wade Drains.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

## 2.7 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.
- F. Risers:
  1. NPS 3/8.
  2. Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube.

## 2.8 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
  1. Size: NPS 1-1/2.
  2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.
  3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
  - 1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 16.16

**SECTION 22 47 13 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes drinking fountains and related components.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of drinking fountain.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For drinking fountains to include in maintenance manuals.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 DRINKING FOUNTAINS**

- A. Drinking Fountains: Stainless steel, wall mounted.
  - 1. Stainless-Steel Drinking Fountains:
    - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
      - 2) Haws Corporation.
      - 3) Willoughby Industries.
  - 2. Standards:
    - a. Comply with ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
    - b. Comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

3. Type Receptor: On horizontal support.
4. Receptor Shape: Rectangular.
5. Back Panel: Stainless-steel wall plate behind drinking fountain.
6. Bubblers: Two, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
7. Maximum water flow: 0.15 gpm.
8. Control: Push bar.
9. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
10. Supply: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
11. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 chrome-plated brass P-trap and waste.
12. Support: Type I water cooler carrier.
13. Drinking Fountain Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.

## 2.2 SUPPORTS

### A. Type I Water Cooler Carrier:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company.
  - b. Wade Drains.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Set pedestal drinking fountains on floor.
- C. Install recessed drinking fountains secured to wood blocking in wall construction.
- D. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.

- E. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball or gate valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- G. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- H. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Install ball or gate shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. After installing fixtures, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 47 13



**SECTION 23 05 00 - MECHANICAL SUPPLEMENTAL CONDITIONS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 REFERENCES**

- A. This entire Division forms an integral part of each HVAC, Fire Protection, Plumbing, controls and all other related mechanical Divisions.
- B. Conditions of the Contract and Division 1, General Requirements, apply to work of this Division. Where paragraphs of this Division conflict with similar paragraphs of Division 1, requirements of this Division shall prevail.
- C. Examine drawings and other Divisions of specifications for requirements that affect work of this Division.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. As used in these Divisions, “provide” means “furnish and install.” “Furnish” means “to purchase and deliver to the project site complete with every necessary appurtenance and support,” and “install” means “to unload at the delivery point at the site and perform every operation necessary to establish secure mounting and correct operation at the proper location in the project”.

**1.3 SCOPE**

- A. Perform work and provide material and equipment as shown on Drawings and/or as specified and/or indicated in this Division of the Specifications. Completely coordinate work of the Division with work of other trades and provide a complete and fully functional installation.
- B. Drawings and Specifications form complimentary requirements; provide work specified and not shown, and work shown and not specified as though explicitly required by both. Although work is not specifically shown or specified, provide supplementary or miscellaneous items, appurtenances, devices and materials obviously necessary for a sound, secure and complete installation.
- C. Give notices, file plans, obtain permits and licenses, pay fees and back charges, and obtain necessary approvals from authorities that have jurisdiction as required to perform work in accordance with all legal requirements and with Specifications, Drawings, Addenda and Change Orders, all of which are part of Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Listing of Drawings does not limit responsibility of determining full extent of work required by these Contract Documents. Refer to Architectural, HVAC, Fire Protection, Plumbing, Electrical, Structural and all other Drawings and other Divisions that indicate types of construction in which work shall be installed and work of other trades with which work of this Division must be coordinated.
- B. Except where modified by a specific notation to the contrary, it shall be understood that the indication and/or description of any item, in the drawings or specifications or both, carries with it the instruction to furnish and install the item, regardless of whether or not this instruction is explicitly stated as part of the indication or description.
- C. Items referred to in singular number in Contract Documents shall be provided in quantities necessary to complete work.

#### 1.5 DISCREPANCIES IN DOCUMENTS

- A. Where Drawings or Specifications conflict or are unclear, advise Architect in writing before Award of Contract. Otherwise, Engineers interpretation of Contract Documents shall be final and no additional compensation shall be permitted due to discrepancies or unclarities thus resolved.
- B. Where Drawings or Specifications do not coincide with manufacturers' recommendations, or with applicable codes and standards, alert Architect in writing before installation. Otherwise, make changes in installed work as Architect requires within Contract Price.

#### 1.6 MODIFICATIONS IN LAYOUT

- A. In order to obtain the Engineer's desired aesthetics in spaces used by building occupants, in all such spaces, prior to installation of visible material and equipment (including access panels) review Architectural Drawings for desired locations and where not definitely indicated, request information from Architect.
- B. Check Contract Drawings, as well as Shop Drawings, of all subcontractors to verify and coordinate spaces in which work of this Division will be installed.
- C. Maintain maximum headroom at all locations. All piping, duct, conduit, and associated components to be as tight to underside of structure as possible.

- D. Where conflicts or potential conflicts exist and engineering guidance is desired, submit sketch or proposed resolution to Engineers for review and approval.

#### 1.7 CODES STANDARDS, AUTHORITIES AND PERMITS

- A. Perform work strictly as required by rules, regulations, standards, codes, ordinances, and laws of local, state, and federal governments, and other authorities that have legal jurisdiction over the site.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be manufactured, installed and tested as specified in latest editions of applicable publications, standards, rulings and determinations of:
  - 1. Local and state building, plumbing, mechanical, electrical, fire and health department codes.
  - 2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
  - 3. American Insurance Association (A.I.A.) (formerly National Board of Fire Underwriters).
  - 4. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
  - 5. Underwriters Laboratories (UL).
  - 6. Factory Mutual Association (FM).
  - 7. Owners Insurance Underwriter.
- C. Material and equipment shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories (UL), and approved by ASME, ANSI and ASTM for intended service.

#### 1.8 GUARANTEE AND 24-HOUR SERVICE

- A. Guarantee the Work of this Division in writing for one year following the date of Substantial Completion. The guarantee shall repair or replace defective materials, equipment, workmanship, and installation that develop within this period, promptly and to Engineer's satisfaction and correct damage caused in making necessary repairs and replacements under guarantee within Contract Price.
- B. Replace material and equipment that require excessive service during guarantee period as defined and as directed by Architect.

- C. Provide 24 hour service beginning on the date of Substantial Completion and lasting until the termination of the guarantee period. Service shall be at no cost to the Owner.
- D. At end of guarantee period, transfer manufacturers' equipment and material warranties still in force to Owner.

#### 1.9 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. As work progresses and for duration of Contract, maintain complete and separate set of prints of Contract Drawings at job site at all times. Record work completed and all changes from original Contract Drawings clearly and accurately including work installed as a modification or addition to the original design. Include actual location of existing utilities if they differ from design documents. Record valve tags as they are installed.
- B. At completion of work prepare a complete set of record drawings on bond paper or CAD discs showing all systems as actually installed.
- C. THE ENGINEER WILL NOT CERTIFY THE ACCURACY OF THE RECORD DRAWINGS - THIS IS THE SOLE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE CONTRACTOR.
- D. Each trade shall submit the record set for approval by the building department in a form acceptable to the department, when required by the jurisdiction. Such drawing format size changes, and supplemental information required for the submittal are the requirement of the contractor.

#### 1.10 BULLETINS, MANUALS, OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS & PROTECTION

- A. Obtain at time of purchase of equipment, three (3) copies of operation, lubrication and maintenance manuals for all items. Assemble literature in coordinated manuals with additional information describing combined operation of field assembled units, including as-built wiring diagrams. Manual shall contain names and addresses of manufacturers and local representatives who stock or furnish repair parts for items or equipment.
- B. Operating instructions: Upon completion of installation, or when Owner accepts portions of building and equipment for operational use, instruct Owner's operating personnel in any or all parts of all systems. Instructions shall be performed by factory-trained personnel. Owner shall determine which systems require additional instructions. Duration of instructions shall take equipment through complete cycle of operation (at least five working days). Make adjustments under operating conditions.

### 1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. This Paragraph supplements Division 1.
- B. Provide a submittal cover sheet as shown on the following page for each item submitted, completely filled out. Do not provide one sheet for multiple submissions.
- C. Provide product data for all equipment shown on drawings or scheduled, prepared by manufacturers, suppliers and vendors including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Detailed dimensional drawings.
  - 2. Accurate and complete description of materials of construction.
  - 3. Installation details.
  - 4. Manufacturer's published performance characteristics and capacity rating (performance data, alone, is not acceptable).
  - 5. Electrical requirements and wiring diagrams. Drawings shall clearly indicate location (terminal block or wire number), voltage and function for all field terminations.
- D. Submittals shall contain information specific to system, equipment, and materials required by Contract Documents for this project only. Do not submit catalogs that describe products, models, options or accessories other than those required, unless irrelevant information is marked out or unless relevant information is highlighted clearly.

### 1.12 METHOD OF PROCEDURE

- A. The drawings accompanying the Specifications are diagrammatic and intended to cover the approximate and relative locations of the Heating, Ventilating, Plumbing and Drainage, and Fire Protection and components.
- B. Installation, connection and interconnection of all components of these systems shall be complete and made in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and best practices of each trade.
- C. Contractors shall confer between themselves and each contractor shall lay out his own work and be responsible for the establishments of heights, grades, etc., for all interior and exterior piping, drains, fixtures, duct work, etc., in strict accordance with the drawings and specifications, and all physical conditions to be met at the building and shall be responsible for accuracy thereof. In case of conflict, equipment shall be relocated without cost to the Owner, as directed by the Engineer.

- D. Extraordinary care shall be used in the erection and installation of all equipment and materials to avoid marring surfaces of the work of other contractors, or of finish work presently in the building, each contractor will be held financially responsible for all such injury caused by lack of precaution and due to negligence on the part of his workmen.

#### 1.13 SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. **Coordination drawings must be prepared. Each trade is (HVAC, Plumbing, Electric, and Fire Protection) is responsible for documenting their work on the plan originally submitted as the pipe fabrication drawing. Location and elevation of the respective discipline's work must be shown on the coordination drawings. All work must be integrated with structural components, including trusses.**

B. Submittal Procedures and Format

1. Review submittal packages for compliance with Contract Documents and then submit to Architect for review. Submit electronically.
2. Provide additional copies of reviewed shop drawings as required for full distribution.
3. Shop Drawings showing layouts of systems shall contain sufficient plans, elevations, Divisions, details and schematics to describe work clearly. They shall be 1/4"=1'-0" scale, unless specified otherwise. Sheet metal shop drawings shall be 3/8"=1'-0" and shall indicate work of other Divisions where physical clearances are critical and where interferences are possible. Provide larger scale details as necessary. Sheet metal drawings shall show elements of Architect's reflected ceiling plan, exposed ductwork, walls, partitions, diffusers, registers, grilles, fire dampers, sleeves and other aspects of construction as necessary for coordination.
4. ALL FIREWALLS MUST BE HIGHLIGHTED ON THE SHEETMETAL DRAWINGS FOR APPROPRIATE COORDINATION.
5. Shop drawings showing manufacturer's product data shall contain detailed dimensional drawings, accurate and complete description of materials of construction, manufacturer's published performance characteristics and capacity ratings (performance data, alone, is not acceptable), electrical requirements and wiring diagrams. Drawings shall clearly indicate location (terminal block or wire number), voltage and function for all field terminations, and other information necessary to demonstrate compliance with all requirements of Contract Documents.
6. Provide shop drawing submittals showing details of piping and vertical connections to ALL equipment. If connection details are not submitted and connections are found to be installed incorrectly in the field, this contractor shall reinstall them within the original contract price.

C. Acceptable Manufacturers

1. The engineer's mechanical design for each product is based on the single manufacturer listed in the schedule or shown on the drawings. In Part 2 of the specifications certain Alternate Manufacturers are listed as being acceptable.

D. Required Use of Acceptable Manufacturers on this Project

1. Substitution of products other than those of the Acceptable Manufacturers specified herein shall not be made. Only the specified items or the comparable product by one of the specified Alternate Manufacturers shall be submitted. Products by other manufacturers shall not be used on this project.

SHOP DRAWING COVER SHEET	
PROJECT:	CONTRACTOR:
DIVISION NO:	DIVISION NO:
DESCRIPTION:	
CONTRACT DRAWING REFERENCE NO:	
EQUIPMENT TAG:	
SUBMISSION (CIRCLE ONE): FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, FOURTH	
DATE:	



INFORMATION AND CHECKLIST	REPLY	COMMENTS
1. Contractor's Log #ID		
2. Name, address, and phone number of supplier		
3. Are all specified or scheduled items included and exactly match scheduled/specified items?	Yes No	
4. Is this item a substitution?	Yes No	
5. Are deviations clearly identified?	Yes No	
6. Does equipment fit space shown on construction documents, coordination drawings, and actual field conditions?	Yes No	
7. Has support, erection, weights, and installation been coordinated with all trades?	Yes No	
8. Does the proposed installation void warranties and/or violate UL or code requirements?	Yes No	
9. Does this material/equipment add expense to any other trade or project costs?	Yes No	
10. Does equipment require interface with other trades? List divisions and specifics requiring coordination?	Yes No	
11. Is control interface coordinated?	Yes No	
12. List electrical characteristics (V/Ph/A)		

E. Deviations

- Concerning deviations other than substitutions, proposed deviations from Contract Documents shall be requested individually, in writing, whether deviations result from field conditions, standard shop practice, or other cause. Submit letter with transmittal of shop drawings, which flags the deviation to the attention of the Architect.

2. Approval of proposed deviations, if any, will be made at discretion of Architect.

F. Responsibility

1. Intent of Submittal review is to check for capacity, rating, and certain construction features. Contractor shall ensure that work meets requirements of Contract Documents regarding information that pertains to fabrication processes or means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction; and for coordination of work of this and other Divisions. Work shall comply with submittals marked “REVIEWED” to extent that they agree with Contract Documents. Submittal review shall not diminish responsibility under this Contract for dimensional coordination, quantities, installation, wiring, supports and access for service, nor shop drawing errors or deviations from requirements of Contract Documents. The architect’s noting of some errors while overlooking others will not excuse the contractor from proceeding in error. Contract Documents requirements are not limited, waived nor superseded in any way by review.
2. INFORM SUBCONTRACTORS, MANUFACTURERS, SUPPLIERS, ETC. OF SCOPE AND LIMITED NATURE OF REVIEW PROCESS AND ENFORCE COMPLIANCE WITH CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.

- G. Schedule: Incorporate shop drawing review period into construction schedule so that work is not delayed. Contractor shall assume full responsibility for delays caused by not incorporating the following shop drawing review time requirements into his project schedule. Working days listed reference the time in the Engineer’s office. It does not include transmittal or review time of Contractor or Architect. Allow at least 10 working days, exclusive of transmittal time, for review each time shop drawing is submitted or resubmitted.

1.14 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Contractor shall furnish and set all sleeves, inserts, etc., required for the installation of his work.

1.15 FLASHING

- A. Base flashing will be provided by the Contractor and counter flashing shall be provided by the Contractor where work pierces roof construction.

1.16 CLEANING

- A. After testing acceptance by Engineer and Owner, Contractor shall thoroughly clean all equipment and material involved in his contract to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

#### 1.17 PAINTING AND FINISHING

- A. Contractor is responsible for completion of painting of all of their installed materials and equipment not factory finished additional miscellaneous painting of their work as directed by the Engineer.

#### 1.18 PIPING – GENERAL

- A. Due to the scale of drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets and fittings which may be required in piping system. Contractor shall furnish all offsets, fittings, valves, traps, specialties and other materials that may be required to meet the conditions without additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Grade water piping of all mechanical systems to avoid pockets and permit systems to be purged of air as well as to be drained.
- C. Do not install joints or fittings over any motor, switchboard or electrical equipment.

#### 1.19 UNIONS AND FLANGES

- A. Install accessible unions and flanges in supply and return connections and other adjacent to all equipment, fixtures, specialties, automatic valves and at all other points in all systems where required to facilitate removal of specialties or equipment for repairs.

#### 1.20 MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL COORDINATION

- A. Contractor shall furnish and install all motors, controllers, starters, pilot lights, float and pressure switches, and control wiring; also other special automatic controls as noted in the Specifications for all equipment furnished under their contracts. This electrical equipment shall be as recommended by the mechanical equipment manufacturer, in accordance with the electrical specifications for similar items, and of such type as to work properly with automatic temperature control sequences where required.
- B. The Contractor shall furnish and install fused disconnect switches and feeders for all motorized equipment under all contracts and make final connection to all motors. Contractor shall wire all of the above items in Paragraphs 1 and 2.

#### 1.21 ELECTRICAL MOTORS AND STARTERS

- A. Mechanical Contractor is responsible, in each instance, for the proper selection of motors and starters of suitable characteristics with details submitted for approval to the Engineer prior to installation.

#### 1.22 INSULATION – GENERAL

- A. Piping and all other insulated items shall be tested approved, cleaned and dried before application of insulation. Insulation shall include all insulating material and their application and finishes as required, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### 1.23 PROTECTION

- A. All openings in pipes, conduits, fittings, duct work, etc., shall be effectively sealed to exclude dirt, sand and other foreign substances.

#### 1.24 TESTS

- A. The following requirements are supplementary to test specified for individual equipment or systems in mechanical and electrical work Divisions.
  - 1. Concealed or insulated work shall remain uncovered until required tests have been completed.
  - 2. Conduct pressure, performance and operating tests as specified or required for each system or equipment unit in presence of the Engineer as well as a representative of agencies having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Obtain certificates of approval and/or acceptance as specified or required in compliance with regulations of agencies having jurisdiction. Work shall not be deemed complete until such certificates have been delivered to the Engineer.
  - 4. Testing shall prove conclusively that all systems operate properly, efficiently and quietly in accordance with intent of drawings and specifications. Each contractor's participation will be required for the life safety acceptance test.
  - 5. Allow 40 hours per trade of the most knowledgeable technician to support testing.

#### 1.25 SERVICING OF EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. After work has been completed under the contract and prior to final acceptance tests, Contractor shall have the manufacturer of the equipment, or their authorized agents, put it into actual operation. In each case, the Contractor shall have the manufacturer thoroughly check the complete installation of the equipment produced by him for proper and correct operation under the services intended.

- B. Contractor shall assure that the owner's personnel are properly instructed in the servicing of the equipment.

#### 1.26 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Contractor shall provide two copies of printed instructions in loose leaf binders to the Engineer upon completion of the installation.

#### 1.27 GUARANTEE

- A. Contractor shall unconditionally guarantee in writing all materials, equipment and workmanship for a period of one year from date of acceptance of systems by Owner as indicated by letter to this effect from Owner to Contractor. Contractor shall provide free service for all equipment involved in contract during this guarantee period.
- B. Guarantee shall include restoration to its original condition of all adjacent work that must be disturbed in fulfilling this guarantee.
- C. All such repairs and/or replacements shall be made without delay and at the convenience of the Owner.

END OF SECTION 23 05 00

**SECTION 23 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.
6. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SLEEVES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.

2. CALPICO, Inc.
  3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anti-corrosion coated or zinc coated, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- E. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- F. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  2. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated, galvanized cast-iron sleeve with integral cast flashing flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  2. Airex Manufacturing.
  3. CALPICO, Inc.
- B. Description:
1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20-psig.
  3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber, High-temperature-silicone, Nitrile (Buna N), interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.

4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel, Composite plastic, Stainless steel, Stainless steel, Type 316.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B 633, Stainless steel, Stainless steel, Type 316, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  2. CALPICO, Inc.
  3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. Description:
  1. Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly, made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
  2. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, use NT.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - c. Pecora Corporation.
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant;



ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Smooth-On.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at

pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 3 inches above finished floor level.
  - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 5. Using waterproof silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated, Horizontal Assembly, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal-system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

### 3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron sleeves, steel pipe sleeves, sleeve-seal fittings.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves, steel pipe sleeves, sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls Below Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 4. Concrete Slabs Above Grade:

- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves, PVC-pipe sleeves, Stack-sleeve fittings, Sleeve-seal fittings, Molded-PE or -PP sleeves, Molded-PVC sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves, PVC-pipe sleeves, Stack-sleeve fittings.
- 5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves, PVC-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 23 05 17

**SECTION 23 05 93 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:
  - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
  - a. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
  - b. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.
3. Balancing steam systems.
4. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
  - a. Heat exchangers.
  - b. Motors.
  - c. Chillers.
  - d. Cooling towers.
  - e. Condensing units.
  - f. Boilers.
  - g. Heat-transfer coils.
5. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
6. Duct leakage tests.
7. Control system verification.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Owner, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. TAB Report: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.

H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC as a TAB technician.

B. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by NEBB or TABB.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.

C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.



### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
  - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Airside:
    - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
    - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
    - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
    - d. Clean filters are installed.
    - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
    - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
    - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
    - h. Ceilings are installed.
    - i. Windows and doors are installed.
    - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
  - 2. Hydronics:
    - a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
    - b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
    - c. Water treatment is complete.
    - d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
    - e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
    - f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
    - g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
    - h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
    - i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
    - j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
    - k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
1. Measure total airflow.

- a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
  2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  4. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
  2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  4. Mark all final settings.

5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
6. Measure and record all operating data.
7. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

#### A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
  - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
  - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
  - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
  - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
  - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
  - f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
  - g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
  - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
  - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
  - d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.

- e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
  - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
  - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
  - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
  - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
  - a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
  - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - d. Mark final settings.
  - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
  - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

### 3.7 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
  1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
  2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
  3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
  4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
  5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
  6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
  7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
  8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
  9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

### 3.8 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

### 3.9 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.10 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.
  - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.

3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. VFD settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water and steam flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.
  6. Balancing stations.
  7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.

- g. Discharge arrangement.
- h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
- j. Number, make, and size of belts.
- k. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- j. Return airflow in cfm.
- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft.
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.



- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
  - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
  - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
  - h. Water flow rate in gpm.
  - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
  - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
  - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
  - l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
  - m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
  - n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
  - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
  - d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
  - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
  - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
  - g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
  - h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
  - i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
  - j. Manifold pressure in psig.
  - k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
  - l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
  - m. Motor voltage at each connection.
  - n. Motor amperage for each phase.
  - o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.
- G. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:
- a. System and air-handling-unit number.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
  - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
  - e. Duct size in inches.
  - f. Duct area in sq. ft.
  - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
  - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
  - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
  - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
- H. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
1. Unit Data:
- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
  - b. Location and zone.

- c. Apparatus used for test.
- d. Area served.
- e. Make.
- f. Number from system diagram.
- g. Type and model number.
- h. Size.
- i. Effective area in sq. ft.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Air velocity in fpm.
- c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
- d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
- e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
- f. Final velocity in fpm.
- g. Space temperature in deg F.

I. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.11 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Construction Manager.
- B. Commissioning authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
  - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.

2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
3. If the second verification also fails, Owner may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.12 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 05 93

**SECTION 23 07 13 - DUCT INSULATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  - 6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
  - 2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
  - 3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
  - 1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
  - 2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.

3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. K-Flex USA.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.

- H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
- J. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Armacell LLC.

## 2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
- B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. 3M.
  - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - c. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.



## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
  - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation.
  2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
  - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

b. Vimasco Corporation.

## 2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Alpha Associates, Inc.

## 2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.
    - c. Proto Corporation.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. Color: White.
- D. Metal Jacket:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.
  2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
    - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper, 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper, 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
    - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Polyguard Products, Inc.

## 2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - b. Compac Corporation.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - b. Compac Corporation.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Compac Corporation.
    - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
    - c. Venture Tape.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 500 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

## D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
  - b. Compac Corporation.
  - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.12 SECUREMENTS

## A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal.
3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

## B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
    - 2) Gemco.
    - 3) Hardcast, Inc.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.

- 2) CL WARD & Family Inc.
  - 3) Gemco.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
    - 2) Gemco.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Gemco.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
    - 2) Gemco.
    - 3) Hardcast, Inc.

- b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
    - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
  - 6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
      - 2) Gemco.
      - 3) Hardcast, Inc.
    - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
  - 7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Gemco.
      - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
  - D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
      - a. C & F Wire.
- 2.13 CORNER ANGLES
- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
  - B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.

3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.

- c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  - 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  - 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
  - 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  - 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
- 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  - 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.

- e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
- 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
- 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
  - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
  - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
  - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.8 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.10 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.

3. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
4. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### 3.11 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

B. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 23 07 13

**SECTION 23 23 00 - REFRIGERANT PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
  - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
  - 3. Refrigerants.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and piping specialty.
  - 1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
    - a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
    - b. Solenoid valves.
    - c. Filter dryers.
    - d. Strainers.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.
  - 2. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
  - 3. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
  - 4. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.



### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

### 1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
  - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.

3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
- B. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.
- C. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- D. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.

- L. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- M. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- N. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- O. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- P. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

- F. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and to restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal.
  - 2. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 3. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod, 1/2 inch.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 2. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 3. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod, 1/2 inch.
- E. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
  - 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
  - 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
  - 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
  - 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  - 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
  - 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  - 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  - 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
  - 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 23 23 00

**SECTION 23 31 13 - METAL DUCTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
3. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
4. Sheet metal materials.
5. Duct liner.
6. Sealants and gaskets.
7. Hangers and supports.
8. Seismic-restraint devices.

**B. Related Sections:**

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS****A. Product Data:** For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

**B. Sustainable Design Submittals.****C. Shop Drawings:**

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top and bottom of ducts.
5. Dimensions of all duct runs from building grid lines.

6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: A single set of plans or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
  1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  2. AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and ASCE/SEI 7. Seismically brace duct hangers and supports in accordance with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- E. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.



## 2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
  - 2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible." All longitudinal seams shall be Pittsburgh lock seams unless otherwise specified for specific application.
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
  - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
  - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 3363.
  - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  - 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: Black.
  - 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch-minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch-minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.5 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
  2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
    - a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
    - b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  3. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534/C 534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
- C. Insulation Pins and Washers:
  1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
  6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm or greater.
  7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
  8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    - a. Fan discharges.
    - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
  9. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.

5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel, stainless steel, or aluminum.

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel, stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
9. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
10. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.
- B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- J. Install fire, combination fire/smoke where indicated on Drawings and as required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation requirements of the damper UL listing.
- K. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."
- M. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
  - 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
  - 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches and larger.
- N. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCTWORK EXPOSED TO WEATHER

- A. All external joints are to have secure watertight mechanical connections. Seal all openings to provide weatherproof construction.
- B. Construct ductwork to resist external loads of wind, snow, ice, and other effects of weather. Provide necessary supporting structures.
- C. Single Wall:
  - 1. Ductwork shall be galvanized steel.
    - a. If duct outer surface is uninsulated, protect outer surface with suitable paint. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
  - 2. Where ducts have external insulation, provide weatherproof aluminum jacket. See Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."

### 3.4 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
  - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
  - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
  - 10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
  - 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."



- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.7 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  - 2. Test the following systems:

- a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 4-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, totaling no less than 25% of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class higher than 2-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections, totaling no less than 25% of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class higher than 2-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections, totaling no less than 25% of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  4. Testing of each duct section is to be performed with access doors, coils, filters, dampers, and other duct-mounted devices in place as designed. No devices are to be removed or blanked off so as to reduce or prevent additional leakage.
  5. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  6. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
  7. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.9 STARTUP
- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."
- 3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE
- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.
- B. Supply Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to VAV/CAV Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 1-inch wg.

- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
  - 2. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
  - 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- C. Return Ducts:
  - 1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
  - 2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
  - 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
    - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 2.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 2.
- E. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
    - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
    - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Galvanized.

## F. Liner:

1. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1-inch thick.

## G. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
  - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
  - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam or Welded.

## H. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 23 31 13

**SECTION 23 33 00 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Manual volume dampers.
2. Control dampers.
3. Fire dampers.
4. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
5. Flange connectors.
6. Duct silencers.
7. Turning vanes.
8. Remote damper operators.
9. Duct-mounted access doors.
10. Flexible connectors.
11. Duct security bars.
12. Duct accessory hardware.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 233346 "Flexible Ducts" for insulated and non-insulated flexible ducts.
2. Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS****A. Product Data:** For each type of product.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

**B. Sustainable Design Submittals.****C. Shop Drawings:** For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

- a. Special fittings.
- b. Manual volume damper installations.
- c. Control-damper installations.
- d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
- e. Duct security bars.
- f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 3 percent of amount installed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.

2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for stainless-steel ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Aire Technologies.
    - b. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
    - c. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
  3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  4. Frames:
    - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    - b. Mitered and welded corners.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
  6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  7. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

## 2.4 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. [American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.](#)
  2. [Arrow United Industries.](#)
  3. [Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.](#)
- B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:
1. Angle shaped.
  2. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  3. Interlocking, gusseted corners.
- D. Blades:
1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
  2. Parallel- and opposed-blade design.
  3. Galvanized-steel.
  4. 0.064 inch thick single skin.
  5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
  6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Bearings:
1. Oil-impregnated bronze.
  2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

## 2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [Air Balance; a division of MESTEK, Inc.](#)
  2. [Aire Technologies.](#)
  3. [American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.](#)
- B. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.



- E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.05 thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
  - 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.024-inch thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.
- K. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable link, factory installed, 165 deg F rated.

## 2.6 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Aire Technologies.
  - 2. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
  - 3. Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with interlocking, gusseted or mechanically attached corners and mounting flange.
- F. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.
- G. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.063-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- I. Leakage: Class II.
- J. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

- K. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.039-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.
- L. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.
- M. Damper Motors: Two-position action.
- N. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
  - 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
  - 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
  - 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C).
  - 6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
  - 7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.
- O. Accessories:
  - 1. Auxiliary switches for position indication.
  - 2. Test and reset switches, remote mounted.

## 2.7 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  - 2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Hardcast, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.8 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Aero-Dyne Sound Control Co.
  - 2. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  - 3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
  - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- E. Vane Construction: Double wall.
- F. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## 2.9 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Pottorff.
  - 2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  - 3. Young Regulator Company.
- B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
- C. Tubing: Aluminum.
- D. Cable: Steel.
- E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed surface.
- F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Steel.

## 2.10 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. [Aire Technologies.](#)
2. [American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.](#)
3. [Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.](#)

B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:
  - a. Double wall, rectangular.
  - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
  - c. Vision panel.
  - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
  - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
  - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
  - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
  - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches.
  - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

## 2.11 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [3M.](#)
  2. [CL WARD & Family Inc.](#)
  3. [Ductmate Industries, Inc.](#)
- B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch steel.
- D. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

## 2.12 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. [CL WARD & Family Inc.](#)
  2. [Ductmate Industries, Inc.](#)
  3. [Duro Dyne Inc.](#)
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
  2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd.
  2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.
- G. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.
- 2.13 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE
- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 includes Section 6.4.3.3.3 - "Shutoff Damper Controls," restricts the use of backdraft dampers, and requires control dampers for certain applications. Install backdraft control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct security bars. Construct duct security bars from 0.164-inch steel sleeve, continuously welded at all joints and 1/2-inch-diameter steel bars, 6 inches o.c. in each direction in center of sleeve. Weld each bar to steel sleeve and each crossing bar. Weld 2-1/2-by-2-1/2-by-1/4-inch steel angle to 4 sides and both ends of sleeve. Connect duct security bars to ducts with flexible connections. Provide 12-by-12-inch hinged access panel with cam lock in duct in each side of sleeve.
- I. Connect ducts to duct silencers rigidly.
- J. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. At drain pans and seals.
  - 3. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 4. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.

5. Control devices requiring inspection.
  6. Elsewhere as indicated.
- K. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- L. Access Door Sizes:
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- M. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- N. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- O. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- P. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- Q. Connect diffusers to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- R. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- S. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- T. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
  3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
  4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
  5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 23 33 00

**SECTION 23 33 46 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Insulated flexible ducts.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals.
- C. Shop Drawings: For flexible ducts.
  - 1. Include plans showing locations and mounting and attachment details.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION**

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."



- D. Comply with ASTM E 96/E 96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

## 2.2 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 3. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
  - 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1, R4.2, R6, R8.

## 2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
- B. Non-Clamp Connectors: Liquid adhesive plus tape.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect VAV/CAV terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- D. Connect diffusers to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- E. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- F. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- G. Installation:

1. Install ducts fully extended.
2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.

H. Supporting Flexible Ducts:

1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches (1800 mm) o.c.

END OF SECTION 23 33 46

**SECTION 23 36 00 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Series, fan-powered air terminal units.
  - 2. Balancing terminal units.
  - 3. Pressure control terminal units.
  - 4. Exhaust single-duct terminal units.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals.
- C. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 4. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustic tile.

3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
    - b. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Fan-Powered-Unit Filters: Furnish one spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."

### 2.2 SERIES FAN-POWERED AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Trane
  2. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
  3. Johnson Controls.
  4. ETI.

- B. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly and fan in series arrangement inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud for installation above a ceiling.
  - 1. Designed for quiet operation.
  - 2. Low-profile design.
- C. Casing: 0.040-inch-thick galvanized steel, single wall.
  - 1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article for fibrous-glass duct liner.
  - 2. Air Inlets: Round stub connections or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
  - 3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
  - 4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket and quarter-turn latches.
  - 5. Fan: Forward-curved centrifugal.
  - 6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with flow-sensing ring and peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
  - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
  - 2. Damper Position: Normally open.
- E. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity sensors in air inlets and air outlets.
- F. Motor:
  - 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 2. Type: Electronically commutated motor.
  - 3. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
  - 4. Enclosure: Open dripproof.
  - 5. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron, cast aluminum, rolled steel.
  - 6. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
  - 7. Motor Speed: Multispeed.
    - a. Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with electronic controls with D-10 VDL signal.
  - 8. Electrical Characteristics – See Schedule.
- G. Filters:
  - 1. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value and Average Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.2.
  - 2. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value: According to ASHRAE 52.2.
  - 3. Material: Pleated cotton-polyester media MERV 7.
  - 4. Thickness: 1 inch.

- H. Factory-Mounted and -Wired Controls: Electrical components mounted in control box with removable cover. Incorporate single-point electrical connection to power source.
  - 1. Control Transformer: Factory mounted for control voltage on electric and electronic control units with terminal strip in control box for field wiring of thermostat and power source.
  - 2. Wiring Terminations: Fan and controls to terminal strip. Terminal lugs to match quantities, sizes, and materials of branch-circuit conductors. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box that is sized according to NFPA 70.
  - 3. Disconnect Switch: Factory-mounted, fuse type.
- I. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and mounted on side of unit.
  - Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls system specified in Section 230900.
  - 1. Electronic Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered open, spring return.
  - 2. Electronic Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with clock display, temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius, temporary occupancy override button, and space temperature set point.
  - 3. Electronic Velocity Controller: Factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; shall maintain constant airflow dictated by thermostat within 5 percent of set point while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations up to 4-inch wg; and shall have a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.
  - 4. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller with electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, and having the following features:
    - a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
    - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
    - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
    - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
- J. Control Sequence – See Schedule.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to AHRI 880.
  - 1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, and AHRI certification seal.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 5, "Hangers and Supports" and with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes and for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 2. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes and for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.2 TERMINAL UNIT INSTALLATION

- A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
- B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- C. Install wall-mounted thermostats or matched pair pressure controller.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to air terminal unit, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for connecting ducts to air terminal units.
- C. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number and nominal airflow. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
  - 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
  - 4. Verify that control connections are complete.
  - 5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
  - 6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION 23 36 00



**SECTION 23 37 13.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

- 1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
- 2. Louver face diffusers.
- 3. Linear bar diffusers.

**B. Related Requirements:**

- 1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.
- 2. Section 233713.23 "Air Registers and Grilles" for adjustable-bar register and grilles, fixed-face registers and grilles, and linear bar grilles.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS****A. Product Data:** For each type of product.

- 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
- 2. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

**B. Samples:** For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.**C. Samples for Initial Selection:** For diffusers with factory-applied color finishes. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.**D. Samples for Verification:** For diffusers, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Hart & Cooley Inc.
  2. Krueger.
  3. Nailor Industries Inc.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: Steel.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel.
- E. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches, 12 by 12 inches.
- F. Face Style: Four cone.
- G. Mounting: Surface T-bar.
- H. Pattern: Adjustable.
- I. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.

### 2.2 LOUVER FACE DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  2. METALAIRE, Inc.
  3. Tuttle & Bailey.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: Steel.

- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- E. Mounting: Surface.
- F. Pattern: One-way, two-way, two-way corner, three-way, four-way core style.
- G. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.

## 2.3 LINEAR BAR DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Hart & Cooley Inc.
  - 2. Krueger.
  - 3. Raymon-Donco.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: Aluminum.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- E. Narrow Core Spacing Arrangement: 1/8-inch-thick blades spaced 1/4 inch apart; zero 15-degree deflection.
- F. Two-Way Deflection Vanes: Extruded construction adjustable louvers with removable core.
- G. Frame: 3/16 inch wide.
- H. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
- I. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed-blade assembly.
- J. Accessories: Alignment pins, core clips, and blank-off strips as required.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 37 13.13

**SECTION 23 37 13.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Adjustable blade face registers and grilles.
2. Fixed face registers and grilles.
3. Linear bar grilles.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
2. Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS****A. Product Data:** For each type of product.

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

**B. Samples:** For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified. Smallest size register and grille indicated.**C. Samples for Initial Selection:** For registers and grilles with factory-applied color finishes. Smallest size register and grille indicated.**D. Samples for Verification:** For registers and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected. Smallest size register and grille indicated.**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

B. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 REGISTERS

A. Adjustable Blade Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Krueger.
  - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - c. Titus.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal/Vertical, spaced ¾ inch apart.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal/Vertical, spaced ¾ inch apart.
7. Frame: 1 inch wide.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

### 2.2 GRILLES

A. Adjustable Blade Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Krueger.
  - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - c. Titus.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.

B. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
  - b. [Price Industries.](#)
  - c. [Titus.](#)
- 2. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
  - 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal; spaced 3/4 inch apart.
  - 5. Core Construction: Integral.
  - 6. Frame: 1 inch wide.
  - 7. Mounting: Countersunk screw.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 37 13.23

**SECTION 23 82 39.13 - UNIT HEATERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes unit heaters with centrifugal or propeller fans and hot-water or electric-resistance heating coils.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.
- D. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include location and size of each field connection.
  - 4. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 5. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
  - 6. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
  - 7. Indicate location and arrangement of integral controls.
  - 8. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.



- D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: Finish colors for units with factory-applied color finishes.
- F. Samples for Verification: Finish colors for each type of unit heater indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 2. Structural members to which unit heaters will be attached.
  - 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
  - 6. Perimeter moldings for exposed or partially exposed cabinets.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Submit certification that unit heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Unit-Heater Filters: Furnish one spare filter for each filter installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
  2. Markel Products; TPI Corporation.
  3. Trane.

### 2.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with AHRI 440.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with UL 2021.

### 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

### 2.4 COIL SECTION INSULATION

- A. Insulation Materials: ASTM C 1071; surfaces exposed to airstream shall have aluminum-foil facing, erosion-resistant coating to prevent erosion of glass fibers.
1. Thickness: 1 inch.
  2. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  3. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  4. Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916 and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

### 2.5 CABINETS

- A. Material: Steel with baked-enamel finish with manufacturer's standard paint, in color selected by Architect.
1. Vertical Unit, Exposed Front Panels: Minimum 0.0528-inch-thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels with channel-formed edges secured with tamperproof cam fasteners.

2. Horizontal Unit, Exposed Bottom Panels: Minimum 0.0528-inch-thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels secured with tamperproof cam fasteners and safety chain.
3. Recessed Flanges: Steel, finished to match cabinet.
4. Control Access Door: Key operated.
5. Base: Minimum 0.0528-inch-thick steel, finished to match cabinet, 4 inches high with leveling bolts.
6. Extended Piping Compartment: 8-inch-wide piping end pocket.
7. False Back: Minimum 0.0428-inch-thick steel, finished to match cabinet.

## 2.6 CONTROLS

### A. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.

1. Fan: Forward curved, high static, double width, centrifugal, directly connected to motor; thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

### B. Basic Unit Controls:

1. Control voltage transformer.
2. Wall-mounted thermostat with the following features:
  - a. Heat-off switch.
  - b. Fan on-auto switch.
  - c. Manual fan-speed switch.
  - d. Adjustable deadband.
  - e. Concealed set point.
  - f. Concealed indication.
  - g. Deg F indication.
3. Wall-mounted temperature sensor.
4. Unoccupied period override push button.
5. Data entry and access port.
  - a. Input data includes room temperature and occupied and unoccupied periods.
  - b. Output data includes room temperature, supply-air temperature, entering-water temperature, operating mode, and status.

## 2.7 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

### A. Cabinet:

1. Horizontal, Surface Mounted:
  - a. Air Inlet: Punched louver or grille.

- b. Air Outlet: Front, punched louver or grille.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- B. Install unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

#### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

END OF SECTION 23 82 39.13

**SECTION 26 05 00 - ELECTRICAL SUPPLEMENTAL CONDITIONS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 REFERENCES**

- A. This entire Division forms an integral part of each HVAC, Fire Protection, Plumbing, controls and all other related mechanical Divisions.
- B. Conditions of the Contract and Division 1, General Requirements, apply to work of this Division. Where paragraphs of this Division conflict with similar paragraphs of Division 1, requirements of this Division shall prevail.
- C. Examine drawings and other Divisions of specifications for requirements that affect work of this Division.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. As used in these Divisions, “provide” means “furnish and install.” “Furnish” means “to purchase and deliver to the project site complete with every necessary appurtenance and support,” and “install” means “to unload at the delivery point at the site and perform every operation necessary to establish secure mounting and correct operation at the proper location in the project”.

**1.3 SCOPE**

- A. Perform work and provide material and equipment as shown on Drawings and/or as specified and/or indicated in this Division of the Specifications. Completely coordinate work of the Division with work of other trades and provide a complete and fully functional installation.
- B. Drawings and Specifications form complimentary requirements; provide work specified and not shown, and work shown and not specified as though explicitly required by both. Although work is not specifically shown or specified, provide supplementary or miscellaneous items, appurtenances, devices and materials obviously necessary for a sound, secure and complete installation.
- C. Give notices, file plans, obtain permits and licenses, pay fees and back charges, and obtain necessary approvals from authorities that have jurisdiction as required to perform work in accordance with all legal requirements and with Specifications, Drawings, Addenda and Change Orders, all of which are part of Contract Documents.

**1.4 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- A. Listing of Drawings does not limit responsibility of determining full extent of work required by these Contract Documents. Refer to Architectural, HVAC, Fire Protection, Plumbing, Electrical, Structural and all other Drawings and other Divisions that indicate types of construction in which work shall be installed and work of other trades with which work of this Division must be coordinated.

- B. Except where modified by a specific notation to the contrary, it shall be understood that the indication and/or description of any item, in the drawings or specifications or both, carries with it the instruction to furnish and install the item, regardless of whether or not this instruction is explicitly stated as part of the indication or description.
- C. Items referred to in singular number in Contract Documents shall be provided in quantities necessary to complete work.

#### 1.5 DISCREPANCIES IN DOCUMENTS

- A. Where Drawings or Specifications conflict or are unclear, advise Architect in writing before Award of Contract. Otherwise, Engineers interpretation of Contract Documents shall be final and no additional compensation shall be permitted due to discrepancies or unclarities thus resolved.
- B. Where Drawings or Specifications do not coincide with manufacturers' recommendations, or with applicable codes and standards, alert Architect in writing before installation. Otherwise, make changes in installed work as Architect requires within Contract Price.

#### 1.6 MODIFICATIONS IN LAYOUT

- A. In order to obtain the Engineer's desired aesthetics in spaces used by building occupants, in all such spaces, prior to installation of visible material and equipment (including access panels) review Architectural Drawings for desired locations and where not definitely indicated, request information from Architect.
- B. Check Contract Drawings, as well as Shop Drawings, of all subcontractors to verify and coordinate spaces in which work of this Division will be installed.
- C. Maintain maximum headroom at all locations. All piping, duct, conduit, and associated components to be as tight to underside of structure as possible.
- D. Where conflicts or potential conflicts exist and engineering guidance is desired, submit sketch or proposed resolution to Engineers for review and approval.

#### 1.7 CODES STANDARDS, AUTHORITIES AND PERMITS

- A. Perform work strictly as required by rules, regulations, standards, codes, ordinances, and laws of local, state, and federal governments, and other authorities that have legal jurisdiction over the site.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be manufactured, installed and tested as specified in latest editions of applicable publications, standards, rulings and determinations of:
  - 1. Local and state building, plumbing, mechanical, electrical, fire and health department codes.
  - 2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
  - 3. American Insurance Association (A.I.A.) (formerly National Board of Fire Underwriters).

4. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
  5. Underwriters Laboratories (UL).
  6. Factory Mutual Association (FM).
  7. Owners Insurance Underwriter.
- C. Material and equipment shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories (UL), and approved by ASME, ANSI and ASTM for intended service.

#### 1.8 GUARANTEE AND 24-HOUR SERVICE

- A. Guarantee the Work of this Division in writing for one year following the date of Substantial Completion. The guarantee shall repair or replace defective materials, equipment, workmanship, and installation that develop within this period, promptly and to Engineer's satisfaction and correct damage caused in making necessary repairs and replacements under guarantee within Contract Price.
- B. Replace material and equipment that require excessive service during guarantee period as defined and as directed by Architect.
- C. Provide 24 hour service beginning on the date of Substantial Completion and lasting until the termination of the guarantee period. Service shall be at no cost to the Owner.
- D. At end of guarantee period, transfer manufacturers' equipment and material warranties still in force to Owner.

#### 1.9 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. As work progresses and for duration of Contract, maintain complete and separate set of prints of Contract Drawings at job site at all times. Record work completed and all changes from original Contract Drawings clearly and accurately including work installed as a modification or addition to the original design. Include actual location of existing utilities if they differ from design documents. Record valve tags as they are installed.
- B. At completion of work prepare a complete set of record drawings on bond paper or CAD discs showing all systems as actually installed.
- C. THE ENGINEER WILL NOT CERTIFY THE ACCURACY OF THE RECORD DRAWINGS - THIS IS THE SOLE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE CONTRACTOR.
- D. Each trade shall submit the record set for approval by the building department in a form acceptable to the department, when required by the jurisdiction. Such drawing format size changes, and supplemental information required for the submittal are the requirement of the contractor.

#### 1.10 BULLETINS, MANUALS, OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS & PROTECTION



- A. Obtain at time of purchase of equipment, three (3) copies of operation, lubrication and maintenance manuals for all items. Assemble literature in coordinated manuals with additional information describing combined operation of field assembled units, including as-built wiring diagrams. Manual shall contain names and addresses of manufacturers and local representatives who stock or furnish repair parts for items or equipment.
- B. Operating instructions: Upon completion of installation, or when Owner accepts portions of building and equipment for operational use, instruct Owner's operating personnel in any or all parts of all systems. Instructions shall be performed by factory-trained personnel. Owner shall determine which systems require additional instructions. Duration of instructions shall take equipment through complete cycle of operation (at least five working days). Make adjustments under operating conditions.

#### 1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. This Paragraph supplements Division 1.
- B. Provide a submittal cover sheet as shown on the following page for each item submitted, completely filled out. Do not provide one sheet for multiple submissions.
- C. Provide product data for all equipment shown on drawings or scheduled, prepared by manufacturers, suppliers and vendors including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Detailed dimensional drawings.
  - 2. Accurate and complete description of materials of construction.
  - 3. Installation details.
  - 4. Manufacturer's published performance characteristics and capacity rating (performance data, alone, is not acceptable).
  - 5. Electrical requirements and wiring diagrams. Drawings shall clearly indicate location (terminal block or wire number), voltage and function for all field terminations.
- D. Submittals shall contain information specific to system, equipment, and materials required by Contract Documents for this project only. Do not submit catalogs that describe products, models, options or accessories other than those required, unless irrelevant information is marked out or unless relevant information is highlighted clearly.

#### 1.12 METHOD OF PROCEDURE

- A. The drawings accompanying the Specifications are diagrammatic and intended to cover the approximate and relative locations of the Heating, Ventilating, Plumbing and Drainage, and Fire Protection and components.
- B. Installation, connection and interconnection of all components of these systems shall be complete and made in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and best practices of each trade.

- C. Contractors shall confer between themselves and each contractor shall lay out his own work and be responsible for the establishments of heights, grades, etc., for all interior and exterior piping, drains, fixtures, duct work, etc., in strict accordance with the drawings and specifications, and all physical conditions to be met at the building and shall be responsible for accuracy thereof. In case of conflict, equipment shall be relocated without cost to the Owner, as directed by the Engineer.
- D. Extraordinary care shall be used in the erection and installation of all equipment and materials to avoid marring surfaces of the work of other contractors, or of finish work presently in the building, each contractor will be held financially responsible for all such injury caused by lack of precaution and due to negligence on the part of his workmen.

#### 1.13 SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. **Coordination drawings must be prepared. Each trade is (HVAC, Plumbing, Electric, and Fire Protection) is responsible for documenting their work on the plan originally submitted as the pipe fabrication drawing. Location and elevation of the respective discipline's work must be shown on the coordination drawings. All work must be integrated with structural components, including trusses.**
- B. Submittal Procedures and Format
  - 1. Review submittal packages for compliance with Contract Documents and then submit to Architect for review. Submit electronically.
  - 2. Provide additional copies of reviewed shop drawings as required for full distribution.
  - 3. Shop Drawings showing layouts of systems shall contain sufficient plans, elevations, Divisions, details and schematics to describe work clearly. They shall be 1/4"=1'-0" scale, unless specified otherwise. Sheet metal shop drawings shall be 3/8"=1'-0" and shall indicate work of other Divisions where physical clearances are critical and where interferences are possible. Provide larger scale details as necessary. Sheet metal drawings shall show elements of Architect's reflected ceiling plan, exposed ductwork, walls, partitions, diffusers, registers, grilles, fire dampers, sleeves and other aspects of construction as necessary for coordination.
  - 4. **ALL FIREWALLS MUST BE HIGHLIGHTED ON THE SHEETMETAL DRAWINGS FOR APPROPRIATE COORDINATION.**
  - 5. Shop drawings showing manufacturer's product data shall contain detailed dimensional drawings, accurate and complete description of materials of construction, manufacturer's published performance characteristics and capacity ratings (performance data, alone, is not acceptable), electrical requirements and wiring diagrams. Drawings shall clearly indicate location (terminal block or wire number), voltage and function for all field terminations, and other information necessary to demonstrate compliance with all requirements of Contract Documents.
  - 6. Provide shop drawing submittals showing details of piping and vertical connections to ALL equipment. If connection details are not submitted and connections are found to be installed incorrectly in the field, this contractor shall reinstall them within the original contract price.

C. Acceptable Manufacturers

1. The engineer's mechanical design for each product is based on the single manufacturer listed in the schedule or shown on the drawings. In Part 2 of the specifications certain Alternate Manufacturers are listed as being acceptable.

D. Required Use of Acceptable Manufacturers on this Project

1. Substitution of products other than those of the Acceptable Manufacturers specified herein shall not be made. Only the specified items or the comparable product by one of the specified Alternate Manufacturers shall be submitted. Products by other manufacturers shall not be used on this project.

SHOP DRAWING COVER SHEET	
PROJECT:	CONTRACTOR:
DIVISION NO:	DIVISION NO:
DESCRIPTION:	
CONTRACT DRAWING REFERENCE NO:	
EQUIPMENT TAG:	
SUBMISSION (CIRCLE ONE): FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, FOURTH	
DATE:	

INFORMATION AND CHECKLIST	REPLY	COMMENTS
1. Contractor's Log #ID		
2. Name, address, and phone number of supplier		
3. Are all specified or scheduled items included and exactly match scheduled/specified items?	Yes No	
4. Is this item a substitution?	Yes No	
5. Are deviations clearly identified?	Yes No	
6. Does equipment fit space shown on construction documents, coordination drawings, and actual field conditions?	Yes No	
7. Has support, erection, weights, and installation been coordinated with all trades?	Yes No	
8. Does the proposed installation void warranties and/or violate UL or code requirements?	Yes No	
9. Does this material/equipment add expense to any other trade or project costs?	Yes No	
10. Does equipment require interface with other trades? List divisions and specifics requiring coordination?	Yes No	
11. Is control interface coordinated?	Yes No	
12. List electrical characteristics (V/Ph/A)		

E. Deviations

- Concerning deviations other than substitutions, proposed deviations from Contract Documents shall be requested individually, in writing, whether deviations result from field conditions, standard shop practice, or other cause. Submit letter with transmittal of shop drawings, which flags the deviation to the attention of the Architect.
- Approval of proposed deviations, if any, will be made at discretion of Architect.

F. Responsibility

- Intent of Submittal review is to check for capacity, rating, and certain construction features. Contractor shall ensure that work meets requirements of Contract Documents regarding information that pertains to fabrication

processes or means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction; and for coordination of work of this and other Divisions. Work shall comply with submittals marked "REVIEWED" to extent that they agree with Contract Documents. Submittal review shall not diminish responsibility under this Contract for dimensional coordination, quantities, installation, wiring, supports and access for service, nor shop drawing errors or deviations from requirements of Contract Documents. The architect's noting of some errors while overlooking others will not excuse the contractor from proceeding in error. Contract Documents requirements are not limited, waived nor superseded in any way by review.

2. INFORM SUBCONTRACTORS, MANUFACTURERS, SUPPLIERS, ETC. OF SCOPE AND LIMITED NATURE OF REVIEW PROCESS AND ENFORCE COMPLIANCE WITH CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.

- G. Schedule: Incorporate shop drawing review period into construction schedule so that work is not delayed. Contractor shall assume full responsibility for delays caused by not incorporating the following shop drawing review time requirements into his project schedule. Working days listed reference the time in the Engineer's office. It does not include transmittal or review time of Contractor or Architect. Allow at least 10 working days, exclusive of transmittal time, for review each time shop drawing is submitted or resubmitted.

1.14 WORKING PLANS (fire protection and fire alarm only)

- A. Submit working plans signed and stamped by professional engineer registered in state in which project is located to authorities that have jurisdiction to:
1. Architect.
  2. Engineer.
  3. Insurance Underwriter.
- B. Submit working plans in one complete package. When it is not possible to submit entire system design in one package due to job conditions, submit plans of entire project indicating area not yet defined.
- C. Working plans will be subject to owner's final approval. Submit to engineer only after review by other authorities.
- D. Pipe sizing shall be based on hydraulic calculations. Submit hydraulic calculations with working plans.
- E. Indicate battery and wire sizing requirements with fire alarm working plan.

1.15 HANGERS

- A. Each Contractor shall supply hangers and hanger supports required for piping and equipment installed under this contract.
- B. Hangers shall adequately support the piping system. Hangers shall be installed in accordance with good practice and as recommended by manufacturer.

## C. Hanger spacing:

<u>Pipe Size Inches</u>	<u>Maximum Spacing</u>
1 and less	7 feet
1 ¼	8 feet
1 ½	9 feet
2	10 feet
2 ½	11 feet
3	12 feet
4	14 feet
6 to 12"	15 feet
12" to 20"	18 feet

## 1.16 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Contractor shall furnish and set all sleeves, inserts, etc., required for the installation of his work.

## 1.17 FLASHING

- A. Base flashing will be provided by the Contractor and counter flashing shall be provided by the Contractor where work pierces roof construction.

## 1.18 CLEANING

- A. After testing acceptance by Engineer and Owner, Contractor shall thoroughly clean all equipment and material involved in his contract to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

## 1.19 PAINTING AND FINISHING

- A. Contractor is responsible for completion of painting of all of their installed materials and equipment not factory finished additional miscellaneous painting of their work as directed by the Engineer.

## 1.20 PIPING – GENERAL

- A. Due to the scale of drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets and fittings which may be required in piping system. Contractor shall furnish all offsets, fittings, valves, traps, specialties and other materials that may be required to meet the conditions without additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Grade water piping of all mechanical systems to avoid pockets and permit systems to be purged of air as well as to be drained.
- C. Do not install joints or fittings over any motor, switchboard or electrical equipment.

## 1.21 UNIONS AND FLANGES

- A. Install accessible unions and flanges in supply and return connections and other adjacent to all equipment, fixtures, specialties, automatic valves and at all other points in all systems where required to facilitate removal of specialties or equipment for repairs.

#### 1.22 MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL COORDINATION

- A. Contractor shall furnish and install all motors, controllers, starters, pilot lights, float and pressure switches, and control wiring; also other special automatic controls as noted in the Specifications for all equipment furnished under their contracts. This electrical equipment shall be as recommended by the mechanical equipment manufacturer, in accordance with the electrical specifications for similar items, and of such type as to work properly with automatic temperature control sequences where required.
- B. The Contractor shall furnish and install fused disconnect switches and feeders for all motorized equipment under all contracts and make final connection to all motors. Contractor shall wire all of the above items in Paragraphs 1 and 2.

#### 1.23 ELECTRICAL MOTORS AND STARTERS

- A. Mechanical Contractor is responsible, in each instance, for the proper selection of motors and starters of suitable characteristics with details submitted for approval to the Engineer prior to installation.

#### 1.24 INSULATION – GENERAL

- A. Piping and all other insulated items shall be tested approved, cleaned and dried before application of insulation. Insulation shall include all insulating material and their application and finishes as required, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### 1.25 PROTECTION

- A. All openings in pipes, conduits, fittings, duct work, etc., shall be effectively sealed to exclude dirt, sand and other foreign substances.

#### 1.26 TESTS

- A. The following requirements are supplementary to test specified for individual equipment or systems in mechanical and electrical work Divisions.
  - 1. Concealed or insulated work shall remain uncovered until required tests have been completed.
  - 2. Conduct pressure, performance and operating tests as specified or required for each system or equipment unit in presence of the Engineer as well as a representative of agencies having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Obtain certificates of approval and/or acceptance as specified or required in compliance with regulations of agencies having jurisdiction. Work shall not be deemed complete until such certificates have been delivered to the Engineer.



4. Testing shall prove conclusively that all systems operate properly, efficiently and quietly in accordance with intent of drawings and specifications. Each contractor's participation will be required for the life safety acceptance test.
5. Allow 40 hours per trade of the most knowledgeable technician to support testing.

#### 1.27 SERVICING OF EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. After work has been completed under the contract and prior to final acceptance tests, Contractor shall have the manufacturer of the equipment, or their authorized agents, put it into actual operation. In each case, the Contractor shall have the manufacturer thoroughly check the complete installation of the equipment produced by him for proper and correct operation under the services intended.
- B. Contractor shall assure that the owner's personnel are properly instructed in the servicing of the equipment.

#### 1.28 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Contractor shall provide two copies of printed instructions in loose leaf binders to the Engineer upon completion of the installation.

#### 1.29 GUARANTEE

- A. Contractor shall unconditionally guarantee in writing all materials, equipment and workmanship for a period of one year from date of acceptance of systems by Owner as indicated by letter to this effect from Owner to Contractor. Contractor shall provide free service for all equipment involved in contract during this guarantee period.
- B. Guarantee shall include restoration to its original condition of all adjacent work that must be disturbed in fulfilling this guarantee.
- C. All such repairs and/or replacements shall be made without delay and at the convenience of the Owner.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 00**

**SECTION 26 05 19 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
  - 2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
  - 3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
  - 4. Tray cable, Type TC, rated 600 V or less.
  - 5. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
  - 6. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. PV: Photovoltaic.
- B. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.
- C. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers
  - 1. Southwire
  - 2. Belden
  - 3. General Cable Tech
  - 4. Okonite Company
- C. Standards:
  - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
  - 2. RoHS compliant.
  - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
  - 1. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
  - 2. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
  - 3. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
  - 4. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
  - 5. Type UF: Comply with UL 83 and UL 493.
  - 6. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- F. Shield:
  - 1. Type TC-ER: Cable designed for use with VFCs, with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation, spiral-wrapped foil plus 85 percent coverage braided shields and insulated full-size ground wire and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

## 2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers
  - 1. Southwire
  - 2. Belden
  - 3. General Cable Tech
  - 4. Okonite Company

## C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

## D. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B 800 and ASTM B 801.

## E. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
2. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
3. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
4. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
5. Type UF: Comply with UL 83 and UL 493.
6. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

## 2.3 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

## A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.

## B. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Comply with UL 1569.
3. RoHS compliant.
4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

## C. Circuits:

1. Single circuit only for lengths under 8'.
2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.

## D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors or Aluminum, complying with ASTM B 800 and ASTM B 801.

## E. Ground Conductor: Insulated.

## F. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

## G. Armor: Steel, interlocked.

## H. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

## 2.4 TRAY CABLE, TYPE TC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of insulated current-carrying conductors with or without an equipment grounding conductor in a nonmetallic jacket.
- B. Standards:
  - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
  - 2. RoHS compliant.
  - 3. Comply with UL 1277.
  - 4. Comply with ICEA S-73-532/NEMA WC 57 for Type TC cables used for control, thermocouple extension, and instrumentation.
  - 5. Comply with ICEA S-95-658/NEMA WC 70 for Type TC cables used for power distribution.
  - 6. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- C. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors or Aluminum, complying with ASTM B 800 and ASTM B 801.
- D. Ground Conductor: Insulated.
- E. Conductor Insulation: Type XHHW-2. Comply with UL 44.
- F. Shield: None.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- E. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- F. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.
- G. PV Circuits: Copper/Aluminum. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway
- B. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway
- C. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway
- D. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway
- E. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway, Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway
- H. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway, Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- I. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway
- J. VFC Output Circuits: Type TC-ER cable with braided shield.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Complete cable tray systems installation according to Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" prior to installing conductors and cables.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRING

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
  - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - 2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated pathway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.
- C. Wiring Method:
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; cabinets; or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- F. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- G. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire-alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- H. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch (25-mm) conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Before electrical circuitry has been energized, test feeder conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements:
  - 2. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
    - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
    - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
      - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
      - 3) Thermographic survey.
    - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
    - d. Inspect for correct identification.
    - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
    - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
    - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
    - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
  - 3. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.



- a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
  4. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
1. Procedures used.
  2. Results that comply with requirements.
  3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19

**SECTION 26 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
  - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
  - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
  - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
  - 1. Test wells.
  - 2. Ground rods.
  - 3. Ground rings.
  - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
  - 1) Test wells.
  - 2) Ground rods.
  - 3) Ground rings.
  - 4) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. O-Z/ Gedney
- B. Burndy
- C. Thomas & Betts

### 2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
  - 3. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.

### 2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- G. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- H. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- J. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- K. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- L. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- M. Straps: Solid copper, [cast-bronze clamp] [copper lugs]. Rated for 600 A.
- N. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal two-piece clamp.
- O. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- P. Water Pipe Clamps:
  - 1. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector.

## 2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad, sectional type; 3/4 inch by 10 feet .
- B. Ground Plates: 1/4 inch thick, hot-dip galvanized.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 3/0 AWG minimum.
  - 1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
  - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches (50 mm) minimum from wall, 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

### 3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

- A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

### 3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with

substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Lighting circuits.
  - 3. Receptacle circuits.
  - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
  - 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.

3. For grounding electrode system, install at least **three** rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. shall be at least 12 inches (300 mm) deep, with cover.
1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
  2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
  3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.
- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each indicated item, extending inside and around the perimeter of building as indicated.
1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 3/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
  2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building's foundation.

- J. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
  - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
  - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  - 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  - 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  - 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
    - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
  - 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
  - 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.



3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
  4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
  5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
- F. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26

**SECTION 26 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Aluminum slotted support systems.
3. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
4. Conduit and cable support devices.
5. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
6. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
7. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
8. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS****A. Product Data:** For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
  - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
  - b. Clamps.
  - c. Hangers.
  - d. Sockets.
  - e. Eye nuts.
  - f. Fasteners.
  - g. Anchors.
  - h. Saddles.
  - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

**B. Delegated-Design Submittal:** For hangers and supports for electrical systems.

1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.
2. Include design calculations for seismic restraints.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
  2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
  3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
  4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
    - f. Projectors.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
  2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

#### 2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
  3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.

5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Slotted Support Systems: Extruded-aluminum channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  2. Channel Material: 6063-T5 aluminum alloy.
  3. Fittings and Accessories Material: 5052-H32 aluminum alloy.
  4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
  5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F 3125/F 3125M, Grade A325 (Grade A325M).
  6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
  7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
  - 1. NECA 1.
  - 2. NECA 101
  - 3. NECA 102.
  - 4. NECA 105.
  - 5. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted [or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, [EMT] [IMC] [and] [RMC] may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits.

Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  6. To Steel: [Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts] [Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69] [Spring-tension clamps].
  7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate [by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements].
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use [3000-psi (20.7-MPa)] <Insert value>, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in [Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."] [Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."]
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:

1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting"] [Section 099123 "Interior Painting"] [and] [Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings"] <Insert painting Sections> for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT (LEED)

- A. The contractor, subcontractors, and their personnel shall follow the procedures and practices for waste separation, collection, and transport as defined in the contractor's "Waste Management Plan" as required by Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."

END OF SECTION 26 05 29

**SECTION 26 05 33 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal conduits and fittings.
  - 2. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
  - 3. Surface raceways.
  - 4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping at conduit and box entrances.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS**

- A. Metal Conduit:



1. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
  3. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
  4. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
  5. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
  6. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- B. Metal Fittings:
1. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
  2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  3. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
  4. Fittings for EMT:
    - a. Material: Steel or die cast.
    - b. Type: Setscrew
- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1, or 3R unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- C. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type, flanged-and-gasketed type unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
  2. Type: Fully adjustable
  3. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- G. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- H. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
  2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
  2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
  3. Underground Conduit: Type EPC-80-PVC, direct buried, or concrete encased.
  4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
  5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
  2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
  3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC.

4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT or MC.
  5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
  6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC or IMC.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
  3. EMT: Use setscrew, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- D. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- E. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- F. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- G. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.

- H. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- I. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- J. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.
- K. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
  - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of [1 inch of concrete cover in all directions.
  - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
  - 5. Change from ENT to GRC before rising above floor.
- L. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
  - 1. Use EMT for raceways.
  - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- M. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- N. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- O. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch (35mm) trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch (41-mm) trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- P. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- Q. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

- S. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- T. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
  - 3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
  - 4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
  - 5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
  - 6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- U. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC[ and EMT] conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
  - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg temperature change.
    - d. Attics: [135 deg F temperature change.
  - 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
  - 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
- V. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 36 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
- W. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements.

- X. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- Y. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- Z. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- AA. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- BB. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

#### A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal *compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."*
2. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
3. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
  - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of the coupling.
  - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
4. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
5. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33

**SECTION 26 05 43 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings, including GRC and PVC-coated steel conduit.
2. Rigid nonmetallic duct.
3. Flexible nonmetallic duct.
4. Duct accessories.
5. Precast concrete handholes.
6. Fiberglass handholes and boxes.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Direct Buried: Duct or a duct bank that is buried in the ground, without any additional casing materials such as concrete.
- B. Duct: A single duct or multiple ducts. Duct may be either installed singly or as component of a duct bank.
- C. Duct Bank:
  1. Two or more ducts installed in parallel, with or without additional casing materials.
  2. Multiple duct banks.
- D. GRC: Galvanized rigid (steel) conduit.
- E. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Include duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.
  2. Include duct, conduits, and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
  3. Include accessories for manholes, handholes, and boxes
  4. Include underground-line warning tape.



5. Include warning planks.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:
  - a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
  - b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
  - c. Include cover design.
  - d. Include grounding details.
  - e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: For duct and duct bank. Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
  1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
  2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency responsible for testing nonconcrete handholes and boxes.
- C. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

- A. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

- B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.2 RIGID NONMETALLIC DUCT

- A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EPC-80-PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as duct.
- B. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EB-20 PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 6 & 8, ASTM F 512, and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 9 by same manufacturer as duct.
- C. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 1. and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated, rigid, PVC interlocking spacers; sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.
- B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Comply with requirements for underground-line warning tape specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Concrete Warning Planks: Nominal 12 by 24 by 3 inches in size, manufactured from 6000-psi concrete.
  - 1. Color: Red dye added to concrete during batching.
  - 2. Mark each plank with "ELECTRIC" in 2-inch-high, 3/8-inch-deep letters.

## 2.4 POLYMER CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE COVER

- A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
- B. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- C. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- E. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.

- F. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.

## 2.5 FIBERGLASS HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE FRAME AND COVER

- A. Description: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester resin enclosure joined to polymer concrete top ring or frame.
- B. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- C. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- E. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
  - 1. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  - 2. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct and duct bank will drain to and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

- C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing." Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing."

### 3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restoration: Replace area [immediately after backfilling is completed] [or] [after construction vehicle traffic in immediate area is complete].
- C. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- D. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 329300 "Plants."
- E. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground duct, duct bank, and underground structures according to "Cutting and Patching" Article in Section 017300 "Execution."

### 3.3 DUCT AND DUCT-BANK INSTALLATION

- A. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into the duct-bank configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.
- B. Install duct according to NEMA TCB 2.
- C. Slope: Pitch duct a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope duct from a high point between two manholes, to drain in both directions.
- D. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in duct and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent duct do not lie in same plane.
- E. End Bell Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. for 5-inch (125-mm) duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
  - 1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet (3 m) from the end bell, without reducing duct slope and without forming a trap in the line.
  - 2. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight line direct-buried duct with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch (19 mm).
  - 3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.

- 4. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight line duct with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- F. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to GRC at least 10 feet (3 m) outside the building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from the building and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for RNC-to-GRC transition. Install GRC penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- G. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct with pulled cables. Seal spare duct at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig (1.03-MPa) hydrostatic pressure.
- H. Pulling Cord: Install 200-lbf- (1000-N-) test nylon cord in empty ducts.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of duct, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field cut openings for duct according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

### 3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures.
  - 2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum 12-inch- (300-mm-) long mandrel equal to duct size minus 1/4 inch (6 mm). If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
  - 3. Test handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of duct until duct cleaner indicates that duct is clear of dirt and debris. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump.
  - 1. Sweep floor, removing dirt and debris.
  - 2. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 26 05 43

**SECTION 26 05 44 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
  - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Silicone sealants.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SLEEVES**

- A. Wall Sleeves:
  - 1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
  - 2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.
- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
  - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
  - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches (1270 mm) or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
  1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.



- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
  - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
    - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
    - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
  - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
  - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
  - 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  - 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.4 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT (LEED)

- A. The contractor, subcontractors, and their personnel shall follow the procedures and practices for waste separation, collection, and transport as defined in the contractor's "Waste Management Plan" as required by Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."

END OF SECTION 26 05 44

**SECTION 26 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.
- B. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

## 2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
  - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase-and Voltage-Level] Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded conductors.
  - 1. Color shall be factory applied[ or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit].
  - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.
  - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
  - 4. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Brown.
    - b. Phase B: Orange.
    - c. Phase C: Yellow.
  - 5. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
  - 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
- C. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
  - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
  - 2. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."
- D. Warning Label Colors:
  - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- E. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."

F. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

## 2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
- B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
  1. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
  2. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
  3. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
  1. Minimum Nominal Size:
    - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
    - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
    - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.

## 2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.
- C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide black stripes on 10-inch (250-mm) centers placed diagonally over orange background and are 12 inches (300 mm) wide. Stop stripes at legends.
- D. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
  - 1. Tape:
    - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
    - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
    - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
  - 2. Color and Printing:
    - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
    - b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
    - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".

## 2.6 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, 0.023 inch thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory printed permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

## 2.7 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:
  - 1. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 3. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).
- B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
  3. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).
- C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
1. Engraved legend.
  2. Thickness:
    - a. For signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
    - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
    - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
    - d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
    - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.

- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- K. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- L. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- M. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- N. Self-Adhesive Labels:
  - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
- O. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.



1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
  - S. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
  - T. Underground Line Warning Tape:
    1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench [or concrete envelope ]exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.
    2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
    3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
  - U. Baked-Enamel Signs:
    1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
    2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches (50 mm) high.
  - V. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
    1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
    2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
  - W. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
    1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
    2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
  - X. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:
    1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
    2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.
- 3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE
- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.

- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil. Stencil legend "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH-VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- (75-mm-) high, black letters on 20-inch (500-mm) centers.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, and at 10-foot maximum intervals.
- D. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: Vinyl wraparound labels.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less: Identify with self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use vinyl wraparound labels to identify the phase.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- G. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- H. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- I. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- J. Equipment Identification Labels:
  - 1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label.
  - 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
  - 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
    - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a self-adhesive laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.

- c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
- d. Switchboards.
- e. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
- f. Enclosed switches.
- g. Enclosed circuit breakers.
- h. Enclosed controllers.
- i. Variable-speed controllers.
- j. Push-button stations.
- k. Contactors.
- l. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- m. Battery-inverter units.
- n. Battery racks.
- o. Power-generating units.
- p. Monitoring and control equipment.
- q. UPS equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 05 53

## **SECTION 26 09 23 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Photoelectric switches.
  - 2. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
  - 3. Emergency shunt relays.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show installation details for the following:
    - a. Occupancy sensors.
    - b. Vacancy sensors.
  - 2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
  - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  - 2. Program Software Backup: On USB media. Provide names, versions, and website addresses for locations of installed software.
  - 3. Device address list.
  - 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Faulty operation of lighting control software.
    - b. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. Description: Solid state, with DPST dry contacts rated for 1800 VA, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.
  - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
  - 3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
  - 4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
  - 5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
  - 6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

## 2.2 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

### A. General Requirements for Sensors:

1. Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
2. Dual technology.
3. Separate power pack.
4. Hardwired connection to switch and lighting control system].
5. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
6. Operation:
  - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
  - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
  - c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor shall be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
7. Sensor Output: Sensor is powered from the power pack.
8. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A LED at 277-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
9. Mounting:
  - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
  - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
  - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
10. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
11. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
12. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.

### B. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch high ceiling.

4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 1000 square feet (110 square meters) above finished floor.

## 2.3 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on- off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application[, and shall comply with California Title 24.
2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA or LED load at 120 V, 1200-VA or LED load at 277 V.

- B. Wall-Switch Sensor:

1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 2100 sq. ft.
2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
3. Switch Type: SP, field- selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off."
4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
5. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
6. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
8. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
9. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
10. Color: White.
11. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

## 2.4 EMERGENCY SHUNT RELAY

- C. Description: NO, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with area switching circuits and un-switched life safety circuit; complying with UL 924.

1. Coil Rating: 277 V.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NEC 1.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- C. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90-percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NEC 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
  - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.



### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
  - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
  - 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
  - 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23

**SECTION 26 24 16 - PANELBOARDS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.
  - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
  - 3. Load centers.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Retain terms that remain after this Section has been edited.
- B. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- C. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- D. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- E. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- F. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
  - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
  - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.

2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
8. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
9. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
  2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two spares for each panelboard.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
  - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
  - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C)] to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
    - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
  - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
  - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. SPD Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces.

- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5.
  - 2. Height: 84 inches (2.13 m) maximum.
  - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
  - 6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
  - 7. Finishes:
    - a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
    - b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
- G. Incoming Mains:
  - 1. Location: convertible between top and bottom.
  - 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
- H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
    - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
    - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.

2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
4. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
5. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.

I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
6. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
9. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

J. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.

K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: Ten percent.

L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled by an NRTL for series-connected short-circuit rating.

1. Panelboards rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
2. Panelboards rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

M. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

## 2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers

1. Siemens
2. Eaton
3. Square D

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.

C. Mains: As indicated on Panel Schedules.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 225 A and Smaller: Plug-in circuit breakers.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 225 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

## 2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers

1. Siemens
2. Eaton
3. Square D

- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- D. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

## 2.5 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers
  - 1. Siemens
  - 2. Eaton
  - 3. Square D
- B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
    - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
    - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes up to 225 A.
  - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  - 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger:
    - a. RMS sensing.
    - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
    - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
    - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
    - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
    - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
    - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
      - 1) Instantaneous trip.
      - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
      - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
      - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
  - 4. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).



- a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
- b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
- c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
- d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
- e. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
- f. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.
- g. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
- h. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
- i. Auxiliary Contacts: One, SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
- j. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
- k. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
- l. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
- m. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

## 2.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.
  - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

## 2.7 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Retain "Portable Test Set" Paragraph below for circuit breakers with solid-state trip devices.

- C. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Referenced NECA and NEMA standards in first paragraph below include similar requirements. See "Testing and Inspecting" Article in the Evaluations.
- B. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- C. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- D. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- E. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Referenced NECA and NEMA standards in first paragraph below include similar requirements. See "Testing and Inspecting" Article in the Evaluations.
- C. Comply with NECA 1.
- D. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- E. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.

3. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- F. Retain first paragraph below if seismic controls are required for Project. Coordinate with Drawings.
  - G. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
  - H. Verify that, whatever height is selected for top of trim in first paragraph below, the operating handle of top-most switch or circuit breaker, in on position, is not higher than 79 inches (2000 mm) above finished floor or grade. Verify with authority having jurisdiction whether maximum breaker height is governed by OSHA regulations, which may require a much lower height for panels.
  - I. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
  - J. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
  - K. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
  - L. Mounting panelboards with space behind is recommended for damp, wet, or dirty locations. The steel slotted supports in the following paragraph provide an even mounting surface and the recommended space behind to prevent moisture or dirt collection.
  - M. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch (16 mm) in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
  - N. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
    1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
    2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
  - O. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
  - P. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
  - Q. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
  - R. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
  - S. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers[ and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

- a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
- b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- c. Instruments and Equipment:
  - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

END OF SECTION 26 24 16

**SECTION 26 27 26 - WIRING DEVICES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
  - 2. USB receptacles.
  - 3. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
  - 4. Twist-locking receptacles.
  - 5. Pendant cord-connector devices.
  - 6. Toggle switches, 120/277 V, 20 A.
  - 7. Wall plates.
  - 8. Floor service fittings.
  - 9. Poke-through assemblies.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. BAS: Building automation system.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. RoHS compliant.
- D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- E. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
  - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
  - 2. Devices shall comply with requirements in this Section.
- F. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
  - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
  - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- G. Device Color:
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System Ivory unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
- H. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.
- I. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

- A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A
  - 1. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
  - 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
  - 3. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
- B. Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacle, 125 V, 20 A
  - 1. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
  - 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
  - 3. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
  - 4. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" Article.

## 2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

- A. Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A :
  - 1. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
  - 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
  - 3. Type: Non-feed through.
  - 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

## 2.4 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

- A. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, 120 V, 20 A
  - 1. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L5-20R.
  - 2. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
- B. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, 250 V, 20 A:
  - 1. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L6-20R.
  - 2. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

## 2.5 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

- A. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector, heavy-duty grade.
- B. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configurations L5-20P and L5-20R.
- C. Body: Nylon, with screw-open, cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
- D. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength, galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.
- E. Standards: Comply with FS W-C-596.



## 2.6 CORD AND PLUG SETS

- A. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
- B. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
- C. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

## 2.7 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 20 A

- A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A :
  - 1. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- B. Antimicrobial, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A :
  - 1. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
  - 2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- C. Two-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A
  - 1. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- D. Antimicrobial, Double-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A
  - 1. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
  - 2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- E. Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A
  - 1. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- F. Four-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A
  - 1. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- G. Pilot-Light, Single-Pole Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A:
  - 1. Description: Illuminated when switch is on.
  - 2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
  - 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

## 2.8 WALL PLATES

- A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.
- B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
  - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
  - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting] or 0.035-inch- thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel
  - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel

4. Material for Labs and Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.
- D. Antimicrobial Cover Plates:
  1. Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
  2. Tarnish resistant.

## 2.9 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

- A. Flush-Type Floor Service Fittings:
  1. Description: Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used, with cover flush with finished floor.
  2. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
  3. Service Plate and Cover: die-cast aluminum with satin finish.
  4. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Data Communication Outlet: Blank cover with bushed cable opening.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
  1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
  2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
  3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
  1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
  2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.

3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
  - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
  - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
  - c. Pigtail existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

H. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

### 3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Tests for Receptacles:
  - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  - 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
  - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  - 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  - 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  - 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault-current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- D. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 27 26

**SECTION 26 28 16 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Nonfusible switches.
  - 3. Receptacle switches.
  - 4. Shunt trip switches.
  - 5. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
  - 6. Molded-case switches.
  - 7. Enclosures.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
  - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
  - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
  - 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
  - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
  - 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
    - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF and Insert calculation program format electronic format.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
  - 2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

### 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 2.3 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

### A. Manufacturers

1. Siemens
2. Eaton
3. Square-D

### B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:

1. Single throw.
2. Three pole.
3. 240, and 600-V ac.
4. 200 A and smaller.
5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses.
6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

### C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

## 2.4 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac ,600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

### C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.



3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
6. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
7. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

## 2.5 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- B. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.
- C. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be 100 percent rated or series rated as indicated on the Drawings. Circuit breaker/circuit breaker combinations for series connected interrupting ratings shall be listed by UL as recognized component combinations. Any series rated combination used shall be marked on the end-use equipment along with the statement "Caution - Series Rated System. \_\_\_\_\_ Amps Available. Identical Replacement Component Required."
- D. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- E. Lugs shall be suitable for 194 deg F (90 deg C) rated wire, sized according to the 167 deg F (75 deg C) temperature rating in NFPA 70.
- F. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- G. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- H. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- I. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
  1. Instantaneous trip.
  2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
  3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
  4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.

- J. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- K. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
- L. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- M. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- N. Features and Accessories:
  - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - 2. Lugs: **Mechanical** type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  - 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
  - 4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; **integrally mounted, self-powered** type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
  - 5. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
  - 6. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  - 7. Auxiliary Contacts: **One SPDT switch** with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  - 8. Alarm Switch: One **NO and one NC** contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
  - 9. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
  - 10. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.

## 2.6 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be **gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1), or phosphatized galvanized steel (NEMA 250 Types 3R, 12).**
- C. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be **externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover, directly operable through the front cover of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 1), or directly operable through the dead front trim of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 3R).** The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool

used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

#### 3.2 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - 3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - 4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
  - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
    - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
    - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
    - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
    - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
    - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
      - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
        - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
      - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
        - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
    - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
    - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
    - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
  - 2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
  - d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
  - e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."
3. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
  - c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
  - e. Determine the following by primary current injection:
    - 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
    - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
    - 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.

- 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
- f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
- g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
- h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
- i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
4. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
5. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
  - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
6. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
  1. Test procedures used.
  2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
  3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

END OF SECTION 26 28 16

**SECTION 26 43 13 - SURGE PROTECTION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes field-mounted SPDs for low-voltage (120 to 600 V) power distribution and control equipment.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Inominal: Nominal discharge current.
- B. MCOV: Maximum continuous operating voltage.
- C. Mode(s), also Modes of Protection: The pair of electrical connections where the VPR applies.
- D. MOV: Metal-oxide varistor; an electronic component with a significant non-ohmic current-voltage characteristic.
- E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.
- H. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 2. Copy of UL Category Code VZCA certification, as a minimum, listing the tested values for VPRs, nominal ratings, MCOVs, type designations, OCPD requirements, model numbers, system voltages, and modes of protection.



### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For SPDs to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace or replace SPDs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL SPD REQUIREMENTS

- A. SPD with Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with UL 1449.
- D. MCOV of the SPD shall be the nominal system voltage.

### 2.2 SERVICE ENTRANCE SUPPRESSOR

- A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 1.
  - 1. SPDs with the following features and accessories:
    - a. Integral disconnect switch.
    - b. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
    - c. Indicator light display for protection status.
    - d. Form-C contacts rated at 2 A and 24-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
    - e. Surge counter.
- B. Comply with UL 1283.
- C. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 200 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
- D. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V.
  2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V.
  3. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V or 1200 V 208Y/120 V.
- E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120 V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
1. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
  2. Line to Ground: 700 V.
  3. Line to Line: 1000 V.
- F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 100 kA.
- G. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.

## 2.3 ENCLOSURES

- A. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.

## 2.4 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Class 2 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install an OCPD or disconnect as required to comply with the UL listing of the SPD.
- C. Install SPDs with conductors between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible, and adjust circuit-breaker positions to achieve shortest and straightest leads. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.
- D. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.
- E. Wiring:

1. Power Wiring: Comply with wiring methods in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
2. Controls: Comply with wiring methods in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
  1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and Specifications.
  2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
  3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.
- B. An SPD will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests, and reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.
- C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

### 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate and maintain SPDs.

END OF SECTION 26 43 13

**SECTION 26 51 19 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:
  - 1. Downlight.
  - 2. Recessed, linear.
  - 3. Strip light.
  - 4. Surface mount, linear.
  - 5. Suspended, linear.
  - 6. Exit light
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.

2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
4. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Diffusers and Lenses: Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Globes and Guards: Furnish at least one of each type.

### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

### 1.9 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."
- B. Ambient Temperature: 41 to 104 deg F.
  - 1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
- C. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

### 2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
    - c. CCT and CRI.
- C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
- D. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- E. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

### 2.3 DOWNLIGHT

- A. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120Vac or 277Vac.
- B. Lamp:
  - 1. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
  - 2. Dimmable from 100 percent to 10 percent of maximum light output.
  - 3. Internal driver.
- C. Housings:

1. Universal mounting bracket.
  2. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.
- D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
1. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
  4. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

## 2.4 RECESSED, LINEAR

- A. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120Vac or 277V.
- B. Lamp:
1. Minimum 1,500 lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lm/W.
  3. Rated lamp life of 35,000 hours to L70.
  4. Dimmable from 100 percent to 10 percent of maximum light output.
  5. Internal driver.
  6. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Housings:
1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
  2. With integral mounting provisions.
- D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- E. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
  4. NEMA LE 4.

## 2.5 STRIP LIGHT

- A. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120Vac or 277Vac.

## B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 750 lm.
2. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
3. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
4. Internal driver.
5. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

## C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. With integral mounting provisions.

## D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping of luminaire without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

## E. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

## 2.6 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR

## A. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120Vac or 277Vac.

## B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 750 lm.
2. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
3. Dimmable from 100 percent to 10 percent of maximum light output.
4. Internal driver.

## C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. With integral mounting provisions.

## D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

## E. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.



## 2.7 SURFACE MOUNT, NONLINEAR

- A. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120Vac or 277Vac.
- B. Lamp:
  - 1. Minimum 750 lm.
  - 2. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
  - 3. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  - 4. Internal driver.
  - 5. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Housings:
  - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
  - 2. With integral mounting provisions.
- D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- E. Standards:
  - 1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  - 2. RoHS compliant.
  - 3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

## 2.8 SUSPENDED, LINEAR

- A. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120Vac or 277Vac.
- B. Lamp:
  - 1. Minimum 1,500 lm.
  - 2. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
  - 3. Dimmable from 100 percent to 10 percent of maximum light output.
  - 4. Internal driver.
- C. Housings:
  - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
  - 2. With integral mounting provisions.
- D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- E. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

## 2.9 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
  1. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 Vac or 277Vac.
  2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
  3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.
  4. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
    - a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in LED power supply for power connection to remote unit.
    - b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

## 2.10 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
  1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Steel:
  1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
  2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for sheet steel.
- C. Stainless Steel:
  1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
  2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240 M.
- D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- E. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.

## 2.11 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.12 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gauge.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

## D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

## E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

## F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Attached to structural members in walls or using through bolts and backing plates on either side of wall.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

## G. Suspended Luminaires:

1. Ceiling Mount:
  - a. Aircraft cable supports with quantities and lengths per manufacturer instructions
2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

## H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

## I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  - 2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 . CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT (LEED)

- A. The contractor, subcontractors, and their personnel shall follow the procedures and practices for waste separation, collection, and transport as defined in the contractor's "Waste Management Plan" as required by Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."

END OF SECTION 26 51 19

**SECTION 26 52 13 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Emergency lighting units.
  - 2. Exit signs.
  - 3. Luminaire supports.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
  - 1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
  - 3. Battery and charger for light units.
  - 4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - 5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Luminaires.
  2. Suspended ceiling components.
  3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
  4. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
  5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed a qualified testing agency.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  2. Luminaire-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every 20 emergency lighting units. Furnish at least one of each type.
  3. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  4. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires and signs in mockups before starting installations.
  - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: Five years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year and prorated warranty for the remaining four years] [the entire warranty period.



2. Warranty Period for Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Two years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year and prorated warranty for the remaining six years] [the entire warranty period.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.
- F. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.
- G. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with ballast.
  1. Emergency Connection: Operate one lamp continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
  2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) or exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C), with an average value exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C) over a 24-hour period.
    - b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C).
    - c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
    - d. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet (1000 m).
  4. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
    - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.

- b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - 5. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  - 6. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
  - 7. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  - 8. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
- H. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more lamps, remote mounted from luminaire.
- 1. Emergency Connection: Operate one LED lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
  - 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  - 3. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp in a remote luminaire continuously.
  - 4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  - 5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
  - 6. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote from luminaire. Remote assembly shall be located no less than half the distance recommended by the emergency power unit manufacturer, whichever is less.
  - 7. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  - 8. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - 9. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  - 10. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

## 2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.
- B. Emergency Lighting Unit:
  - 1. Emergency Lighting Unit: as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Operating at nominal voltage of 277 V ac.
  - 3. Wall with universal junction box adaptor.

4. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.
5. Two LED lamp heads.
6. External emergency power unit.

## 2.3 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
  1. Operating at nominal voltage of 277 V ac.
  2. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each luminaire; 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
  3. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
  4. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.
  5. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
    - a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in LED power supply for power connection to remote unit.
    - b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
  1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:
  1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
  2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
  3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:
  1. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 METAL FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

F. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 52 13

**SECTION 26 56 19 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.
3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- D. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.
  1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
  2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
  4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.

5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and photoelectric relays to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
  2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Lamps: Furnish at least one of each type.
  2. Glass, Acrylic, and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: Furnish at least one of each type.
  3. Diffusers and Lenses: Furnish at least one of each type.
  4. Globes and Guards: Furnish at least one of each type.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."
- B. Ambient Temperature: 41 to 104 deg F.
  - 1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
- C. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

### 2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- C. Internal driver.
- D. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use and in enclosed locations.

### 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum, Stainless steel, or Epoxy-coated steel. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.
- D. Diffusers and Globes:
  - 1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  - 2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.



- F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
  - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
  - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- G. Housings:
  - 1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
  - 2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
    - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

## 2.4 FINISHES

- A. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- B. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  - 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
- C. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
  - 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
    - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.

## 2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
- G. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- I. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

### 3.3 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch-thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
  - 1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
  - 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

### 3.7 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT (LEED)

- A. The contractor, subcontractors, and their personnel shall follow the procedures and practices for waste separation, collection, and transport as defined in the contractor's "Waste Management Plan" as required by Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."

END OF SECTION 26 56 19

**SECTION 28 46 21.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fire-alarm control unit.
  - 2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
  - 3. System smoke detectors.
  - 4. Air-sampling smoke detectors.
  - 5. Heat detectors.
  - 6. Notification appliances.
  - 7. Device guards.
  - 8. Remote annunciator.
  - 9. Graphic annunciator.
  - 10. Addressable interface device.
  - 11. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
  - 12. Radio alarm transmitter.
  - 13. Network communications.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- C. HLI: High Level Interface.
- D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- E. PC: Personal computer.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.

1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
6. Include battery-size calculations.
7. Include input/output matrix.
8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
11. Provide program report showing that air-sampling detector pipe layout balances pneumatically within the airflow range of the air-sampling detector.
12. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.
  - a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
  - b. Show field wiring required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
  - c. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' control system.
  - d. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' smoke-evacuation system.
  - e. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - f. Show air-sampling detector pipe routing.
13. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
14. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
  - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
  - b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; Level III minimum.
  - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and

design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

### A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

### B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

### A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
  - d. Riser diagram.
  - e. Device addresses.
  - f. Record copy of site-specific software.
  - g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
    - 1) Equipment tested.
    - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
    - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.

- 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
- 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.

- h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
- i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Smoke Detectors, Fire Detectors: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed.
  2. Detector Bases: Quantity equal to two percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
  3. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamperproofed components.
  4. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.
  5. Fuses: Two of each type installed in the system. Provide in a box or cabinet with compartments marked with fuse types and sizes.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a UL-listed alarm company.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
  2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Provide system manufacturer's certification that all components provided have been tested as, and will operate as, a system.
- B. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and voice horn/strobe evacuation.
- C. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- D. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:
  - 1. Manual stations.
  - 2. Heat detectors.
  - 3. Smoke detectors.
  - 4. Duct smoke detectors.
  - 5. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
  - 6. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
  - 7. Fire standpipe system.
  - 8. Dry system pressure flow switch.
- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
  - 1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice evacuation notices.
  - 2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit, connected network control panels, and remote annunciators.
  - 3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
  - 4. Activate alarm communication system.
  - 5. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
  - 6. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
  - 7. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
  - 8. Activate elevator power shunt trip.
  - 9. Record events in the system memory.
  - 10. Indicate device in alarm on the graphic annunciator.
- C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
  - 1. Valve supervisory switch.
  - 2. High- or low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe sprinkler system.
  - 3. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.

4. Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
5. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
6. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
8. Failure of battery charging.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
10. Voice signal amplifier failure.

E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Initiate notification appliances.
2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit, connected network control panels, and remote annunciators.
3. After a time delay of 200 seconds, transmit a trouble or supervisory signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
4. Transmit system status to building management system.
5. Display system status on graphic annunciator.

## 2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Simplex.
2. Notifier.
3. Silent Knight.

B. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
  - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
  - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder.
  - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.

- d. The FACP shall be listed for connection to a central-station signaling system service.
    - e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.
  - 2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
  - 3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.
- C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
  - 1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 80 characters, minimum.
  - 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
- D. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
  - 1. Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class A.
  - 2. Pathway Survivability: Level 0.
  - 3. Install no more than 100 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
  - 4. Serial Interfaces:
    - a. One dedicated RS 485 port for central-station operation using point ID DACT.
    - b. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
    - c. One USB port for PC configuration.
    - d. One RS 232 port for VESDA HLI connection.
    - e. One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.
- E. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
  - 1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
  - 2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
  - 3. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
  - 4. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.
- F. Notification-Appliance Circuit:
  - 1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
  - 2. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.

## G. Elevator Recall:

1. Elevator recall shall be initiated only by one of the following alarm-initiating devices:
  - a. Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
  - b. Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
  - c. Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.
2. Elevator controller shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor if lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors are activated.
3. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location without time delay.
  - a. Water-flow switch associated with the sprinkler in the elevator pit may have a delay to allow elevators to move to the designated floor.

## H. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.

## I. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.

## J. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals shall be powered by 24-V dc source.

1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.

## K. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.

1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.

## L. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

## 2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Faraday.
2. Federal Signal Corporation.

3. [GE UTC Fire & Security; A United Technologies Company.](#)

- B. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
1. Single-action mechanism, breaking-glass or plastic-rod type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
  2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
  3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.

## 2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. [Bosch Security Systems, Inc.](#)
2. [Harrington Signal, Inc.](#)
3. [Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.](#)

- B. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
2. Detectors shall be four-wire type.
3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated.
7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition.
  - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
  - b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F.
  - c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
  - d. Sensitivity levels based on time of day.

- C. Ionization Smoke Detector:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
  - a. Primary status.
  - b. Device type.
  - c. Present average value.
  - d. Present sensitivity selected.
  - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

D. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
  - a. Primary status.
  - b. Device type.
  - c. Present average value.
  - d. Present sensitivity selected.
  - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

## 2.6 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Gamewell - FCI by Honeywell.
  2. Keltron Corporation.
  3. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
- B. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
- C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg F.
1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.

2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

## 2.7 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Gentex Corporation.
  2. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  3. Siemens Industry, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
- B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
  1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- C. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet (3 m) from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.
- D. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) high letters on the lens.
  1. Rated Light Output:
    - a. 30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
  2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
  3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
  4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
  5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
  6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, white.

## 2.8 GRAPHIC ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Harrington Signal, Inc.
  2. Mircom Technologies, Ltd.
  3. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.

- B. Graphic Annunciator Panel: Mounted in an aluminum frame with nonglare, minimum 3/16-inch- (4.76-mm-) thick, clear acrylic cover over graphic representation of the facility. Detector locations shall be represented by red LED lamps. Normal system operation shall be indicated by a lighted, green LED. Trouble and supervisory alarms shall be represented by an amber LED.
  - 1. Comply with UL 864.
  - 2. Operating voltage shall be 24-V dc provided by a local 24-V power supply provided with the annunciator.
  - 3. Include built-in voltage regulation, reverse polarity protection, RS 232/422 serial communications, and a lamp test switch.
  - 4. Surface mounted in a NEMA 250, Type 1 cabinet, with key lock and no exposed screws or hinges.
  - 5. Graphic representation of the facility shall be a CAD drawing and each detector shall be represented by an LED in its actual location. CAD drawing shall be at 1/8-inch per foot scale or larger.
  - 6. The LED representing a detector shall flash two times per second while detector is an alarm.

## 2.9 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
  - 1. Mounting: Surface cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

## 2.10 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:
  - 1. Include address-setting means on the module.
  - 2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
  - 3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall.
  - 1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
  - 2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- D. Control Module:



1. Operate notification devices.
2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

## 2.11 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

- A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632.
- B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture one telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.
- C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
  1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
  2. Programming device.
  3. LED display.
  4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
  5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
  1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
  2. Address of the supervisory signal.
  3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
  4. Loss of ac supply.
  5. Loss of power.
  6. Low battery.
  7. Abnormal test signal.
  8. Communication bus failure.
- E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

## 2.12 NETWORK COMMUNICATIONS

- A. Provide network communications for fire-alarm system according to fire-alarm manufacturer's written requirements.
- B. Provide network communications pathway per manufacturer's written requirements and requirements in NFPA 72 and NFPA 70.

- C. Provide integration gateway using BACnet for connection to building automation system.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
  - 1. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches (1980 mm) above the finished floor.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 270548.16 "Seismic Controls for Communications Systems."
- C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
  - 1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches (1520 mm) of the exit doorway.
  - 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
  - 3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches (1060 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
  - 1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
  - 2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
  - 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.

4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A.
  5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
  6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches (300 mm) from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches (9100 mm) long shall be supported at both ends.
1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- G. Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location. Do not install smoke detectors in sprinklered elevator shafts.
- H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

### 3.3 PATHWAYS

- A. Pathways above recessed ceilings and in nonaccessible locations may be routed exposed.
1. Exposed pathways located less than 96 inches above the floor shall be installed in EMT.
- B. Pathways shall be installed in EMT.
- C. Exposed EMT shall be painted red enamel.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.

1. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighters' smoke-control system panel.
2. Alarm-initiating connection to stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.
3. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
4. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
5. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
6. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
7. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.
8. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt-trip breaker.
9. Data communication circuits for connection to building management system.
10. Supervisory connections at fire-extinguisher locations.
11. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
12. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

### 3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
    - a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
    - b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.

2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
  4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

### 3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

### 3.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.

- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
  - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

### 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

### 3.11 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT (LEED)

- A. The contractor, subcontractors, and their personnel shall follow the procedures and practices for waste separation, collection, and transport as defined in the contractor's "Waste Management Plan" as required by Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."

END OF SECTION 28 46 21.11